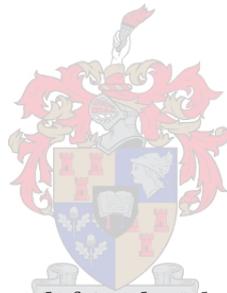


Contributions to Microwave Passive Component Design

by

Petrie Meyer



*Dissertation presented for the degree of Doctorate in
Engineering in the Faculty of Engineering at Stellenbosch
University*

Supervisor: Prof. C. Fourie

December 2019

Declaration

By submitting this dissertation electronically, I declare that the entirety of the work contained therein is my own, original work, that I am the sole author thereof (save to the extent explicitly otherwise stated), that reproduction and publication thereof by Stellenbosch University will not infringe any third party rights and that I have not previously in its entirety or in part submitted it for obtaining any qualification.

Date: December 2019

Copyright © 2019 Stellenbosch University
All rights reserved.

Abstract

Contributions to Microwave Passive Component Design

P. Meyer

Dissertation: DEng

December 2019

The dissertation presents an overview of the publications of the candidate and his research group on design techniques and structures for microwave passive networks which have advanced the field in a number of aspects. They have also impacted materially on local industry. The work includes three main activities, namely numerical modelling and analysis of microwave structures, microwave filter applications, and microwave antenna applications.

A particular focus is placed on structures supporting multiple propagating modes, as this has been a recurring topic throughout the career of the author. Firstly applied to microwave waveguide filters, his most recent work extends multimodal concepts also to antennas. The modelling of these structures forms a crucial part of the design procedure, and also contributes largely to the ability of designers to exploit this behaviour to achieve added functionality and improved performance.

Uittreksel

Contributions to Microwave Passive Component Design

P. Meyer

Proefskrif: DIng

Desember 2019

Hierdie proefskrif bied 'n oorsig aan van die kandidaat en sy navorsingsgroep se publikasies in die veld van passiewe mikrogolf netwerke en antennes, wat 'n bydrae tot die veld gemaak het, en 'n impak in industrie gehad het. Drie hoof aktiwiteite word aangebied, naamlik numeriese modellering en analise, mikrogolf filter toepassings, en mikrogolf antennes.

'n Spesifieke fokus word geplaas op strukture wat die voortplanting van meer as een modus ondersteun, aangesien hierdie 'n deurlopende tema was in die kandidaat se hele loopbaan. Oorspronklik toegepas op filterstrukture, verskyn hierdie tema ook in die mees onlangse werk op antennes. Die modellering van hierdie strukture vorm 'n integrale deel van die ontwerpsiklus, en dra beduidend by tot die vermoë van ontwerpers om hierdie tipe gedrag te benut, om sodoende ekstra funksionaliteit in te bou in die ontwerp, en werkverrigting te verhoog.

Acknowledgements

I would like to express my sincere gratitude to the following people and organisations ...

Contents

Declaration	i
Abstract	ii
Uittreksel	iii
Acknowledgements	iv
Contents	v
List of Figures	vi
1 Background	1
1.1 Introduction	1
1.2 A Short Profile	2
1.3 Contributions	3
1.4 Layout	4
1.5 Recognition	4
2 Modelling	6
2.1 Introduction	6
2.2 The Combined Mode-Matching and Method-of-Lines Technique	8
2.3 Other Computational Work	12
2.4 Measurement	14
2.5 Parameter Extraction of FET Circuit models	14
2.6 Interpolation-Based Meta-Models of Microwave Components .	19
2.7 Conclusion	31
3 Microwave Filters	32
3.1 Introduction	32
3.2 Bandpass filters utilising higher-order modes	32
3.3 Bandstop filters for microwave heating applications	39
3.4 Waffle-iron filters	42
3.5 Absorbing filters	46
3.6 Tunable and Planar Filters	50

3.7	Multi-band filters	62
3.8	Other Filters	66
3.9	Conclusion	72
4	Passive Devices	73
4.1	Introduction	73
4.2	Matching networks	73
4.3	Directional Couplers	75
4.4	Power dividers and combiners	78
4.5	Microwave Switches	82
4.6	Conclusion	87
5	Antennas, Antenna Feeds, and Mixed-Mode Formulations	88
5.1	Introduction	88
5.2	X-band monopulse waveguide feed	88
5.3	The Square Kilometre Array Antenna	90
5.4	Multi-mode antennas and mixed-mode systems	92
5.5	Reflector antenna feeds	107
5.6	Conclusion	111
6	Conclusions	113
	Appendices	114
A	Postgraduate Students	115
A.1	DEng Graduates	115
A.2	Postdoctoral Fellows	115
A.3	PhD Graduates	115
A.4	Current PhD students - 2018	116
A.5	Master's students upgraded to PhD	116
A.6	Master's Graduates	117
A.7	Current Master's students	118
	Bibliography	119

List of Figures

2.1	E-plane waveguide filter	7
2.2	Discretisation for 2D Method-of-Lines	9

2.3	Interdigital filter top view	10
2.4	Interdigital filter cross-sections	11
2.5	Interdigital filter response	11
2.6	13-Element small-signal FET-model	15
2.7	Comparison of extraction errors	16
2.8	Global error function behaviour	17
2.9	Global error function behaviour	17
2.10	Robustness plots and histograms	18
2.11	Model responses of successive order	21
2.12	Optimised response showing support points	21
2.13	Typical characteristic function	21
2.14	Characteristic function as numerator and denominator showing support points	21
2.15	Microstrip line cross-section	22
2.16	Finline cross-section	22
2.17	Microstrip modes	22
2.18	Finline modes	22
2.19	Two-variable function landscape showing support points	23
2.20	Two-variable error landscape	23
2.21	Step in waveguide	23
2.22	Model errors for step in waveguide	23
2.23	Iris in waveguide	24
2.24	Model errors for iris in waveguide	24
2.25	Step in waveguide for multi-variate, multiple output problem	24
2.26	Model errors for step in waveguide for multi-variate, multiple output problem	24
2.27	Slot in waveguide for multi-variate, multiple output problem	24
2.28	Model errors for slot in waveguide for multi-variate, multiple output problem	24
2.29	Input and output coupled ring resonators	25
2.30	Fit of interpolation model	26
2.31	Split modes	27
2.32	Masked modes	27
2.33	Identification of modes for thin ring	28
2.34	Identification of modes for thick ring	29
2.35	Resonance frequencies of modes for thin ring	30
2.36	Resonance frequencies of modes for thick ring	30
2.37	Calculation of Q	30
2.38	Resonant frequency and Q results	30
3.1	Circuit model for a mult-mode discontinuity	33
3.2	Basic waveguide discontinuity structure	35
3.3	Basic waveguide discontinuity circuit	35
3.4	Basic waveguide discontinuity structure	35

3.5	Basic waveguide discontinuity circuit	35
3.6	Typical cylindrical waveguide iris	36
3.7	Performance of Space-Mapping optimisation	36
3.8	Typical characteristic polynomial	36
3.9	Quad-mode diplexer modes	37
3.10	Quad-mode diplexer	37
3.11	Quad-mode diplexer results	37
3.12	Shorted-stub filter	38
3.13	Shorted-stub coupling	38
3.14	Shorted-stub filter results	38
3.15	Dielectric heating oven	39
3.16	Bandstop filter functional block	40
3.17	Functional block equivalent circuit	40
3.18	Functional block parameter space	40
3.19	Bandstop filter convergence	40
3.20	Bandstop filter	41
3.21	Bandstop filter result - mode 1	41
3.22	Bandstop filter result - mode 2	41
3.23	Bandstop filter result - mode 3	41
3.24	Dielectric heating oven	42
3.25	Waffle-Iron filter	43
3.26	Waffle-Iron filter with oblique pattern 1	44
3.27	Waffle-Iron filter with oblique pattern 2	44
3.28	Comparison of waffle-iron design approaches	44
3.29	Waffle-Iron filter measured results S11	45
3.30	Waffle-Iron filter measured results S21	45
3.31	Planar waffle-iron filter 1	46
3.32	Planar waffle-iron filter 2	46
3.33	Planar waffle-iron stackup	46
3.34	Typical planar manufacturing problems	46
3.35	Planar waffle-iron filter 1 measurement	47
3.36	Planar waffle-iron filter 2 measurement	47
3.37	Etched ring absorber	48
3.38	Etched ring filter results	48
3.39	Principle of absorbing filter	48
3.40	Basic absorbing slot structure	49
3.41	Absorbing slot equivalent circuit	49
3.42	Absorbing slot filter	49
3.43	Absorbing filter S11	50
3.44	Absorbing filter S21	50
3.45	Triple band resonator	51
3.46	Triple band resonator equivalent circuit	51
3.47	Triple band detuned resonator	52
3.48	Detuned resonance frequencies	52

3.49 Triple band filter	52
3.50 Triple band filter measurements	52
3.51 Composite split-ring resonator	53
3.52 Composite split-ring resonator states	53
3.53 Composite split-ring resonator measurements	54
3.54 Mixed coupling matrix	54
3.55 Mixed coupling circuit	54
3.56 Mixed coupling filter layout	55
3.57 Mixed coupling filter measurements	55
3.58 Pedestal resonator structure	56
3.59 Pedestal resonator characteristics	56
3.60 Pedestal resonator filters	57
3.61 Pedestal resonator filter 1 measurements	57
3.62 Pedestal resonator filter 1 measurements	58
3.63 Spatially decoupled biasing principle	59
3.64 Tunable staircase filter using spatial decoupling	59
3.65 Filter measurements	59
3.66 Tunable Non-Resonant-Node inverter principle	60
3.67 Tunable NRN Coupling	61
3.68 Tunable NRN spurious response	61
3.69 Tunable NRN Filter	61
3.70 Tunable NRN filter measurements S21	61
3.71 Tunable NRN filter measurements S11	62
3.72 Tunable NRN filter measurements S11	62
3.73 Multiband frequency transform	63
3.74 Multiband frequency transform function	64
3.75 Multiband LC transform	64
3.76 Multiband resonator transform	64
3.77 Multiband filter	65
3.78 Multiband filter response	65
3.79 Multiband waveguide filter	65
3.80 Multiband waveguide filter response	65
3.81 Multiband coaxial filter layout	66
3.82 Multiband coaxial filter photograph	66
3.83 Multiband coaxial filter measurements	66
3.84 Multiband coaxial filter measurements	66
3.85 Tunable evanescent mode filter	67
3.86 Filter measurements	67
3.87 Miniaturised combline filter structure	67
3.88 Miniaturised combline filter	67
3.89 Miniaturised combline filter measurements	68
3.90 Wideband measurements	68
3.91 Combline filter for KAT receiver	68
3.92 KAT filter measurements	69

3.93	KAT filter measurements	69
3.94	KAT7 filter photograph	69
3.95	KAT7 filter layout	69
3.96	KAT7 filter measurements	69
3.97	KAT7 filter measurements	69
3.98	Cylindrical waveguide diplexer	70
3.99	Comblin diplexer	70
3.100	Comblin diplexer measurements	71
3.101	Comblin diplexer measurements	71
3.102	Coaxial diplexer	71
3.103	Coaxial diplexer measurements	71
4.1	Waveguide to finline transition	74
4.2	Focussing optimiser	75
4.3	VR optimiser	75
4.4	Finline taper measured results	75
4.5	Finline taper measured results	75
4.6	Moreno crossed-slot directional coupler	76
4.7	Bandwidth comparisons for couplers with different roof heights	76
4.8	Two-layer crossed-slot measured results	77
4.9	Two-layer crossed-slot measured results	77
4.10	Three-layer crossed-slot measured results	78
4.11	Basic conical line combiner	79
4.12	Conical combiner input port detail	79
4.13	Conical combiner common port detail	79
4.14	Conical combiner cross section	79
4.15	Conical combiner measured S11	80
4.16	Conical combiner measured Sn1	80
4.17	Tapered line conical combiner common port detail	80
4.18	Tapered line conical combiner cross section	80
4.19	Tapered line conical combiner measured S11	81
4.20	Tapered line conical combiner measured Sn1	81
4.21	Conical line cut-off frequencies	82
4.22	Conical line mode pattern	83
4.23	PIN diode mounting structure	84
4.24	Embedded PIN diode model	84
4.25	PIN diode in evanescent mode waveguide	84
4.26	Evanescent mode waveguide model	84
4.27	Third order switch construction	85
4.28	Fifth order switch attenuation	85
4.29	Fifth order switch in filter mode	86
4.30	Fifth order switch attenuation in filter mode	86
4.31	Evanescent mode switch low power test results	86
4.32	Evanescent mode switch high power test results	86

LIST OF FIGURES

xi

5.1	Monopulse feed modes	89
5.2	Monopulse feed structure	89
5.3	Monopulse feed predicted modal return loss	90
5.4	Monopulse feed plus channel return loss	90
5.5	Monopulse feed azimuth channel return loss	90
5.6	Monopulse feed elevation channel return loss	90
5.7	The MEERKAT antenna array	91
5.8	Dual mode antenna layout	93
5.9	Modal radiation patterns	93
5.10	Measured radiation patterns	94
5.11	Combined radiation patterns	94
5.12	Dual mode antenna - second prototype	95
5.13	Modal excitations	95
5.14	Dual mode receiver	96
5.15	Dual-mode sensitivity	96
5.16	Quad-mode antenna	97
5.17	Quad-mode receiver	97
5.18	Quad-mode excitations and patterns	97
5.19	Quad-mode antenna gain	98
5.20	Quad-mode IXR	98
5.21	Quad-mode antenna with bow-tie	99
5.22	Matching of QMA with bow-tie	99
5.23	Quad-mode antenna TSA	99
5.24	Matching of QMA with TSA	99
5.25	Onsala LOFAR LBA array configuration	100
5.26	Comparison of QMA and LBA Arrays	100
5.27	Multi-port Networks	101
5.28	General mixed-mode network	101
5.29	Single-ended radiation patterns	103
5.30	Modal radiation patterns	103
5.31	Transformed measured pattern cuts	104
5.32	Four conductor transmission line	105
5.33	Single-ended port electric fields	105
5.34	Mixed-mode port electric fields	105
5.35	S-parameters using simple transformation	106
5.36	S-parameters using full transformation	106
5.37	Six conductor transmission line	106
5.38	Six conductor transmission line port electric fields	107
5.39	Six conductor transmission line S-parameters	107
5.40	QRFH structure	108
5.41	Cross-section of flared ridges	108
5.42	QRFH feeds	110
5.43	Comparison of excited modes	110
5.44	Aperture modes	111

*LIST OF FIGURES***xii**

5.45 TE-mode cut-off frequencies in taper	111
5.46 QRFH antenna prototype	111
5.47 Prototype quadaxial feed	111
5.48 Measured results of the QRFH prototype	112
5.49 Measured results of the QRFH prototype	112

Chapter 1

Background

1.1 Introduction

Passive microwave component design has undergone huge changes over the past 30 years, but in some ways has also stayed much the same. In the 1980's, computer power and memory, especially that of personal computers, were very limited, and electromagnetic analysis was only possible on large mainframe computers. Designers of passive microwave components were therefore fully dependent on equivalent circuit models of distributed structures, with the values of the circuit elements expressed as functions of physical dimensions such as lengths and widths, and wavelength. Classical texts such as Marcuvitz's *Waveguide Handbook*, *Microwave Filters, Impedance-Matching Networks, and Coupling Structures* by Matthaei, Young and Jones, and Collin's *Field Theory of Guided Waves*, as well as a host of journal papers, provided graphs and formulas for equivalent circuit elements, and designers were effectively limited to these structures. Any new structures had to be characterised with approximate (or self-written numerical) electromagnetic analysis, or measurements.

Since then, the capabilities of both personal computers and commercial electromagnetic software have grown exponentially, with the current state-of-the-art making the analysis of a typical planar or cavity filter possible on a laptop, and within a time frame of minutes. This has created an enormous amount of freedom for designers, as any geometrical shape can now be investigated for its electrical properties, and used in a design.

In addition, the application of microwave circuits have undergone a breathtaking change - three decades have essentially witnessed the whole mobile revolution. Where microwave components and sub-systems were the domain of expensive military and communications equipment, now even a simple cell-phone contains up to eight microwave radios. The active parts of microwave systems have shrunk exponentially, and entire receiver-transmitter units are currently available on commercially available chips. For designers of passive subsystems, mobile applications have created a whole new set of very chal-

lenging design requirements, with form-factors, weight, size and most importantly cost, of equal or more importance than electrical performance. New developments in manufacturing techniques such as multi-layer stacking of microwave substrates, and inexpensive numerically controlled milling machines, have opened up the way for completely new ways of thinking about microwave design, resulting in three-dimensional technologies such as Surface Integrated Waveguide (SIW) and Low Temperature Co-fired Ceramic (LTCC).

While a lot has changed, the most important aspects of microwave design have however remained, and ironically even grown in importance. With essentially unlimited design variations possible these days, it has become imperative for present day designers to have a fundamental knowledge of how fields behave in structures, of the characteristics of a wide range of classical and modern solutions, and of the possibilities and cost of a host of manufacturing processes. Especially for an engineer trained in classical network synthesis and modelling, the current environment offers design opportunities never seen before.

The aim of the dissertation presented here, is to illustrate the contributions of myself and my research group to this exciting field of microwave passive circuits, including antennas. Viewed as a body of knowledge, I believe this work has made a significant contribution to the field in both the academic research community, and the commercial microwave industry in South Africa. This dissertation therefore describes my journey through three decades of microwave passive component design, up to the time of writing in 2018.

1.2 A Short Profile

My tertiary education commenced when I enrolled for my BEng degree in 1983 at the Department of Electronic Engineering at Stellenbosch University. I subsequently obtained all my degrees at the same department, with an MEng in 1986, a PhD in 1995, and quite dramatically different, a BA Honours degree in English Literature in 2012. The latter was started on a whim, but ended up being an immensely enriching experience. Whilst busy with my Master's degree, I also embarked on what turned out to be a lifelong academic career, first as a temporary, part-time, junior lecturer, and then stepwise through all the ranks. In 2003 I was appointed as a full professor, and most recently, in 2016, as a Distinguished Professor. Through the years I was involved with almost all levels of departmental management, including that of Head of Department.

Almost from the start of my career, I became active in the broader professional environment. Over the years, I have worked as contract designer for a host of local companies, primarily on microwave filter design. On the academic front, I started the first local newsletter of the South African branch of the IEEE in 1990, and filled various positions in the society until I became chairman of the local branch in 1996. I was general chair of three consecutive local IEEE AP/MTT conferences (2005-2009), and on the technical commit-

tee of various IEEE Region 8 africon conferences, including being chair of the technical programme committee of IEEE region 8 africon 1999. During this period, I was also a standing member of a THRIP panel (THRIP was one of the largest government funding programmes in South Africa).

Since 2000, I and my research group have been involved with a number of international cooperation programmes. Most important of these were a joint project under the South Africa-Flaanders agreement with KU Leuven on parameter extraction techniques to establish circuit models for microwave FET's (2000-2006), a joint project under the South Africa-Flaanders agreement with Antwerp University on macro-modelling of microwave circuits (2002-2006), and a European Union FP7 project (Marie Curie) *Multiwaves*, on tunable and reconfigurable filters (2010-2014). This project included Novi-Sad University (Serbia), University of St Petersburg (Russia), and Herriot-Watt University (Scotland).

At present, I head the Microwave and Antenna Laboratory at Stellenbosch University, a research group funded by a number of local industrial partners, the National Research Foundation (NRF), and the South African SKA. The group currently consists of 10 staff members and in the region of 50 postgraduate students.

1.3 Contributions

My activities over the years have covered quite a wide spectrum of research. Starting from mainly defence orientated work on numerical electromagnetic analysis techniques and applications to microwave filter design, I spent a significant phase working on mathematical modelling (or meta-modelling) and optimisation of microwave structures. This branched out to other microwave devices such as combiners and switches. The most recent years saw a deep involvement in the South African efforts on the Square-Kilometre-Array (SKA) radio telescope which is currently under construction in the Karoo, including work on reflector antenna feeds, arrays, receiver front ends etc.

In terms of research outputs, my body of work at present includes more than 40 peer-reviewed journal papers, more than 80 conference papers and workshops, 2 book chapters and 2 patents. I have supervised more than 60 postgraduate students and post-doctoral fellows, including 2 DEng candidates - the highest degree awarded by the Faculty of Engineering at Stellenbosch University, based on a lifetime technical contribution. The first of these was by Prof Willem Perold on his contributions to the fields of superconductor devices and sensors [1], and the second by Prof David Davidson on his contributions to the field of electromagnetics [2]. A full list appears in Appendix A.

The main contributions of myself and my research group over the past three decades, can be summarised as follows:

- Advances in the design of devices using multiple propagating modes. This includes modelling and analysis algorithms, structural innovation, and measurement techniques. The range of devices includes filters, dividers and antennas.
- Advances in mathematical models (meta-models) of microwave devices, including multi-variate models, and optimisation techniques exploiting these models.
- Advances in microwave filter design. This includes a number of unpublished high-performance filters for industry which will be discussed here briefly.
- Advances in multi-modal antenna design, and work on the SKA reflector feed designs.

These topics will be discussed in detail in the body of the dissertation, with references to published work.

1.4 Layout

As the aim of this dissertation is purely to present contributions by myself and my research group, it differs markedly from standard dissertations in terms of referencing. For the purposes of the DEng, only references to work by the author himself are included. It goes without saying however that all the work presented here built on previous work by other authors not referenced here. In all cases, the reader should consult the specific papers for these references.

The dissertation is structured by topic and not chronologically, as many of the topics run throughout the whole of my career. Four main chapters make up the bulk of the work. Chapter 2 presents my work on numerical analysis, mathematical modelling and optimisation. Chapter 3 focuses on filters and devices utilising higher order propagating modes, except antennas. Chapter 4 discusses work on general passive devices. Finally, Chapter 5 presents the work on antennas.

1.5 Recognition

While the body of the dissertation provides a technical perspective on my research career, I have over the years received more general recognition on a number of occasions, which do not form part of the main dissertation text. At the completion of my Master's degree, I was awarded the Stellenbosch University Chancellor's medal, the highest award of the university to a student, partially based on my research for the degree. In 2009, I was elected as Fellow of the South African Academy of Engineering, and in 2015 I received the

Stellenbosch University Lifetime Award, for excellence over a career. This is the highest award of the university to a staff member. In 2012 the South African National Research Foundation (NRF) awarded me a B-rating (a B-rating indicates an "internationally recognized researcher"). Finally, in 2016 I was appointed as one of 40 Distinguished Professors at Stellenbosch University, the highest academic rank at the university.

Chapter 2

Modelling

2.1 Introduction

Numerical modelling is an integral part of microwave, antenna and electromagnetics research. Throughout a large part of my career, any analysis or design of a structure was done using circuit models, with element values in look-up tables or from equations, or self-written electromagnetic analysis code. Even for filter synthesis, self-written code was required if no standard tables could be used. The start of my career therefore focused very strongly on Computational Electromagnetics (CEM), and the creation of numerical software tools.

In the case of numerical electromagnetic analysis, especially in-house written code which can seldom be optimised for speed, execution times are often long. When there is a requirement for optimisation, such a code needs to execute multiple times, which often results in design cycles which are prohibitively slow. The late 1990's saw a surge in attention in so-called *meta-models* - typically sets of general mathematical equations, such as partial fraction expansions or polynomials, with coefficients calculated by a set of test points. As a result of a joint programme with Antwerp University, meta-modelling formed a large part of my research for almost a decade.

While meta-models proved extremely useful for passive structures, active components such as transistors are even today still best modelled by equivalent circuit models. To obtain the element values for such a circuit model, from for instance a set of measurements, is however challenging, as the sensitivity of any response to one of the elements can vary wildly between elements. So-called *parameter extraction* techniques thus also formed an important part of my research.

Finally, any device utilising multiple excitations, or multiple sets of electromagnetic fields, requires advanced network models. The development of network theory and models for thus type of device stretches back to the very start of my career, and has emerged again in my most recent work on multi-mode antennas. This is however discussed in chapter 5.

2.1.1 Accurate Filter Synthesis

In 1986, my final year project entailed the accurate exact design of filters using the insertion loss method combined with cascade synthesis. At that stage, the first personal computers typically had clock speeds of below 10MHz and typically 128kB of RAM, and floating point operations required a special co-processor. The problem with exact synthesis was (and is) that it is numerically ill-conditioned, in the sense that small rounding errors at each stage of the synthesis very quickly cause the synthesis to become unstable. In the cascade synthesis procedure, this takes the form of two element values which should be identical at each stage of the process, starting to diverge in numerical value. To combat this, synthesis could either be performed in a transformed frequency plane, known as z-plane synthesis, or by keeping all the polynomials in product form, i.e. as a list of roots. The latter was my project, and required a complex-valued numerical root-finding procedure at each step. No complex variable type however existed in any of the standard compiler languages, therefore I had to create a library of pointer-based algorithms to perform from the most basic of numerical operations, to fairly advanced two-variable Newton-Raphson algorithms.

This was my first taste of numerical work, and resulted in my first set of publications [3, 4]. It also initiated me into a field which would become one of my core research fields.

2.1.2 E-plane filters and the Mode-Matching method

Waveguide filters with thin metal inserts in the E-plane (therefore called *E-plane filters*), emerged as a very popular type of filter in the early eighties. All the inserts could be etched very accurately and inexpensively from a single thin metal sheet, resulting a filter with waveguide performance, yet requiring only very simple manufacturing techniques. An example is shown in Fig 2.1.

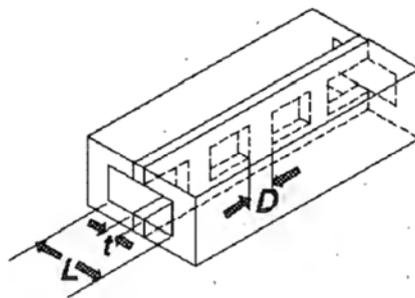


Figure 2.1: E-plane waveguide filter (from [5])

The goal of my Master's degree was to design such a filter. As full-wave optimisation of a three-dimensional structure was not possible, the design relied on creating equivalent circuit models of each vertical post, using numerical electromagnetic analysis of only one post. This resulted in my first numerical code - an implementation of the Mode-Matching Method. This code ran on an Olivetti M24 personal computer, and could perform a narrow band frequency sweep of a second order filter in a few hours. At the time, the work was of significant interest to the local defence industry, as South Africa was under severe sanctions due to the political situation, and especially microwave components and subsystems were extremely hard to acquire on the open market. It was therefore published locally [5].

Due to the very long analysis times, the dependence on EM analysis in order to design these filters was problematic to local industry, and a set of equations was next derived to approximate the analysis accurately enough to design very narrow band filters [6, 7]. Finally, the work was extended to round pins in waveguide [8].

2.2 The Combined Mode-Matching and Method-of-Lines Technique

Both the technique for Mode-Matching analysis from my Master's degree work, and the complex root-finding technique from my undergraduate work, would prove to be building blocks of my first serious research effort, i.e. my PhD [9]. Again originating from industry, a serious local need had arisen for planar filters at the time of the start of my PhD. While the theory for the Finite-Element electromagnetic analysis (FEM) of planar circuits was well established at that stage, analysis of even a very simple structure, such as a single discontinuity, was a challenge in terms of both memory and execution time on a personal computer. Most compilers for personal computers (running Microsoft MS-DOS) had a maximum size limit of 64kB for any single variable, and for FEM analysis, quite complicated data structures were required which very quickly created single variable structures exceeding this limit. Even though various software techniques emerged to create larger variables by using more than one 64kB block, these were slow, clumpy and often failed.

For two-dimensional planar structures, a very efficient and accurate method of electromagnetic analysis was proposed by Pregla and Pascher in 1989. This method solved the two-dimensional Helmholtz equation in a transformed domain on a set of vertical lines, and was called the *Method-of-Lines (MOL)*. The basic structure for half of a symmetrical two-layer planar structure is shown in Fig. 2.2.

The MOL relied on the discretisation of the partial derivative with respect to the horizontal direction. With the z -directed electric field on line i described

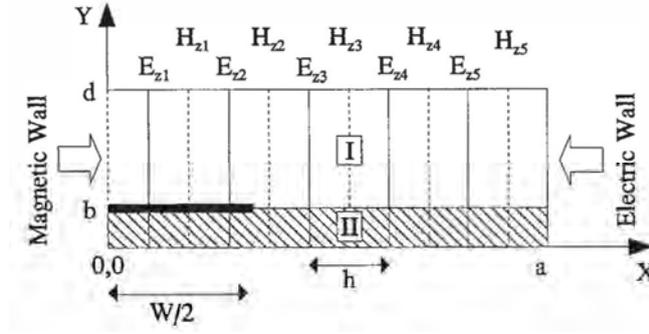


Figure 2.2: Discretisation for 2D Method-of-Lines(from [10])

by a set of equations

$$\frac{\partial^2 E_{zi}}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 E_{zi}}{\partial y^2} + (\gamma^2 + k^2) E_{zi} = 0 \quad (2.1)$$

where $i = 1 \dots N$, the finite difference derivatives with respect to x can be expressed in a matrix form as

$$\frac{\partial^2 [E_z]}{\partial x^2} = \frac{1}{h^2} [D_{xx}] [E_z] \quad (2.2)$$

This allows the system to be diagonalised using standard matrix techniques and the diagonalisation matrix $[T]$, consisting of the eigenvectors of $[D_{xx}]$. In turn, this can be used to define the transformed field vector $[\tilde{E}_z] = [T]^t [E_z]$. When inserted back into a transformed Helmholtz equation, a set of one-dimensional, second order differential equations in y are obtained as

$$\frac{1}{h^2} [d] [\tilde{E}_z] + \left(\frac{\partial^2}{\partial y^2} + \gamma^2 + k^2 \right) [\tilde{E}_z] = 0 \quad (2.3)$$

where $[d]$ is the diagonal eigenvalue matrix of $[D_{xx}]$. Each of these equations can be solved separately by applying the correct, transformed boundary conditions and solving for values of γ .

The 2D-MOL is a very efficient numerical implementation, as only one dimension is discretised while the other is treated analytically, resulting in very small matrices. The extension to three-dimensional problems however proved to be difficult, as instead of $N \times N$ -matrices (where N is the number of lines), sets of $N_x N_z \times N_x N_z$ matrices result (with N_x the number of lines in the x -direction and N_z the number of lines in the z -direction). For structures with large z -dimensions such as transmission-line filters, this proved fatal, as the matrices simply became too large.

For my PhD, I proposed a combination of the very memory-efficient 2D-MOL, and the equally memory-efficient *Mode-Matching Method*. The latter

was one of the first numerical electromagnetic analysis techniques, and entails the matching of orthogonal expansions of fields on both sides of an abrupt discontinuity.

In order to do this, the work firstly developed closed-form analytical expressions for the transformed fields in the 2D-MOL [11], which at that point were not available in literature. This was then used to find solutions for the propagation constant γ for each cross-section of the structure. The process to calculate γ for high numbers of modes (up to 100) is completely non-trivial, and involves the finding of multiple imaginary and complex roots, in ascending order without skipping one, of a severely non-linear function which exhibits poles and zeros in random orders - such function not being available analytically, but only through a computer algorithm. The next step, i.e. the application of the Mode-Matching Method, required the solution of the generalised scattering matrix for each discontinuity, using the integrals of products of the fields. To implement this analytically, I developed a set of Mode-Matching equations in the transformed domain which yielded a full set of generalised S-parameters using only analytical diagonal matrices, of low order. This was the first formulation of this nature, and because of the diagonal nature and the low order of the matrices, had a very low memory requirement, and a fast execution speed [10]. The method was further extended to analyse whole structures by cascading the S-parameters of each discontinuity with section of multi-modal transmission lines.

The combined technique, called the *Combined Mode-Matching and Method-of-Lines Technique*, was tested on a variety of single microstrip discontinuities such as open and short-circuits, and gaps. As a final illustration, a small interdigital filter which exhibited an unexpected transmission zero, was analysed [12]. The filter, and its cross-sections, are shown in Figs. 2.3 and 2.4

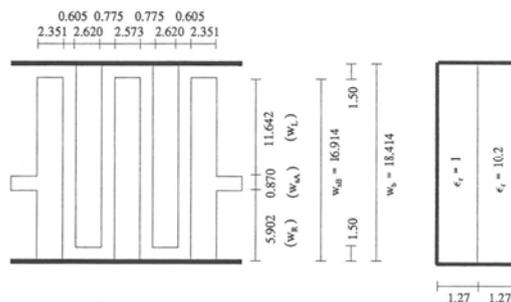


Figure 2.3: Interdigital filter top view (from [12])

The full filter response, shown in Fig. 2.5, clearly shows the transmission zero, and a filter response with a 5% error in centre frequency as compared to measurement.

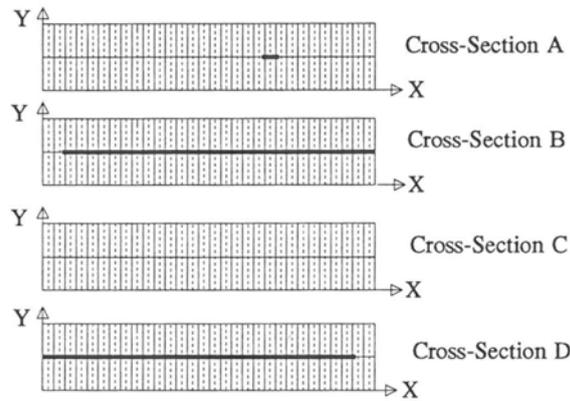


Figure 2.4: Interdigital filter cross-sections (from [12])

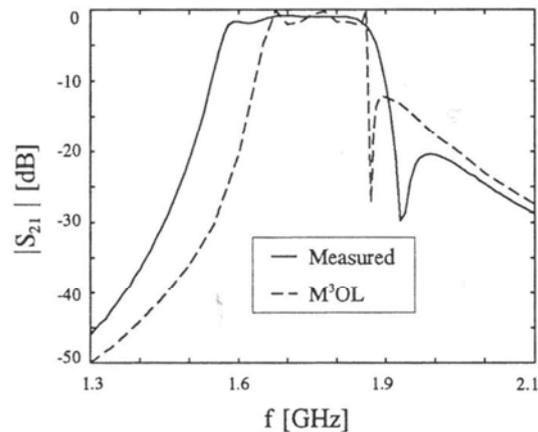


Figure 2.5: Interdigital filter response (from [12])

To assess this work after a twenty-five-year interval is complex. After two decades of rapid progress in computational electromagnetics, it is hard to envisage a scenario where no commercial tools were available to analyse even a small filter. For the example shown, this code was one of a very small number of methods at the time which could analyse such a filter on a small PC. The result in Fig. 2.5 indeed shows only a comparison with measured data, as no other software was available. As such, the work constituted a very useful tool for planar design, as it could show full-wave effects in addition to the normal circuit, or TEM-line analysis. It also extended the 2D-MOL significantly, as the 3D implementation would never become viable due to the very large data structures it required.

At the time, this approach had the following unique advantages over exist-

ing methods:

- Using the smallest data structures of any full-wave method.
- Having data structures independent of the longitudinal dimension of a structure. This was especially useful for planar filter structures having relatively few discontinuities along the longitudinal direction, but electrical lengths of a number of wavelengths.
- Having both memory requirement and execution time completely independent of the height of the structure, as that was treated analytically.
- Yielding modal information between every two successive discontinuities.

The enormous jumps in computer hardware and software would however, within a few years, remove the limits on variable size, and allow for huge data structures. This suited the methods utilising full three-dimensional discretisation, which could be used for much more general structures. Methods like the one proposed here therefore very quickly became redundant, and would indeed be replaced rapidly by commercial software such as CST, Ansoft HFSS, etc.

The impact of this first research project on my own work would however turn out to be significant and lasting, and a very important building block in my career. Especially the themes related to higher order electromagnetic modes would become a recurring theme in my work, and would appear in future work on microwave filters, modelling, and antennas.

2.3 Other Computational Work

Following the completion of my PhD, my work would mostly shift from direct CEM to that of modelling and structural design. However, a number of contributions on CEM were made over the years, mostly as part of various bigger projects.

The first of these was work on the so-called *hybrid methods* that were very popular in the early 90's. At this time, a large body of research focused on the combination of different numerical methods, exploiting the strong points of each. For this work, PhD student Dr Riana Geschke, with supervision from my colleague Prof David Davidson, Prof Ron Ferrari from Cambridge, and myself, implemented a method proposed by Prof Ferrari, the so-called *Extended Huygens' Method*, for waveguide problems [13]. The technique formed part of the class of hybrid Integral Equation and Finite Element techniques, as applied to general penetrable discontinuities, with the aim of treating the region exterior to waveguide discontinuity using the Surface Integral Formulation, and the discontinuity with the Finite Element Method. The method employed both the electric and magnetic waveguide Green dyadics in an integral equation that may be recognised to be of the form described as a formulation of Huygens'

principle, here satisfying the particular field boundary conditions of a hollow waveguide [14, 15, 16, 17]. The method proved to be efficient in terms of memory, but again the rapid improvements in computers made the work essentially obsolete within a few years.

Other work, in the form of small niche solutions, were focused on improving the speed of standard methods for specific structures. The first of these was a technique for optimally selecting the modes to be used in a given Mode-Matching implementation, which emerged from the PhD work of my student Dr Chris Vale, during his research into multi-modal stopband filters [18]. For general cross-sections, an infinite set of modes, including all TE, TM, and hybrid modes need to be used to perfectly match fields at a boundary. However, the behaviour of scattering parameters are typically influenced by only a few dominant modes. For simple problems, it is straightforward to identify these dominant modes, but for more complex problems, this becomes more difficult. This work automated this process, and reduced the matrices to be solved dramatically by ignoring non-dominant modes.

A second very useful contribution in this area, was from the Master's degree work on Method-of-Moments implementations by my student Dr Marlize Schoeman [19], and took the form of a detailed analysis of the structure of the matrices generated by the Method-of-Moments' formulations utilising both magnetic and electric surface currents for apertures and metal sections respectively [20]. As for the work on Mode-Matching, this work was aimed at packing the matrices in ways that allow for a separation between dominant and non-dominant entries, resulting in smaller matrices. In addition, the work provided fascinating insights into the method itself.

As a final contribution of significance in this list, an algorithm for optimising the placement of sources in the 2D Method-of-Moments analysis of coupled line structures of arbitrary form, resulted from the undergraduate work on interdigital filter design by my student Dr Dirk de Villiers [21]. The method used straight-line shadows to calculate directly illuminated areas, with these areas then populated with a high density of sources. The 2D Method-of-Moments is very simple to implement, and the technique is still used widely for quick MATLAB programmes.

While general CEM software has become the default tool for designers over the last decade, such software is still very expensive, especially for industry. For standard structures, many of the classical techniques can be (and often still are) self-coded. The improvements referenced here are therefore still used in industry, even today. Open-source software such as Python has in fact created a small resurgence in the development of toolboxes which can analyse sets of very specific and limited structures.

2.4 Measurement

An important part of modelling is of course the verification of models. In the 1990's, this was mostly done using published results, or measurements using Vector Network Analysers. For the latter, calibration is of essence, and my modelling work at the time exposed me to the world of calibration and measurements. At the time, superconductors also formed part of my interests, and my very first postgraduate student, Mr Jakobus van Zyl, therefore worked on calibration procedures for measurements of superconducting passive devices [22]. This also resulted in the first international conference publication by one of my students, an important milestone in my career [23]. This work also brought me my first PhD student, Dr Cornel van Niekerk, who started his career on this subject [24].

2.5 Parameter Extraction of FET Circuit models

Starting in 1996, myself and Dr Cornell van Niekerk embarked on a project to extract circuit models for Field-Effect transistors (FET's) from measured S-parameters [25]. This work was in response to a need by the local RADAR industry to have a better first-pass design success for microwave amplifier designs. At the time, few good models were available from vendors, and designers had to rely on generic models, or measured data. The availability of a good circuit model offered significant design advantages in terms of noise matching, or gain optimisation over frequency.

The first step in this direction was a new procedure to calculate element values of a general small-signal FET circuit model which would fit a given set of small-signal S-parameters. This calls for a solution to the so-called *parameter extraction* problem, a very difficult process, as the standard FET-model shown in Fig. 2.6 has 13 circuit elements, while only four complex S-parameters, over a limited frequency range, are available to perform a fit.

The problem can be classified as an inversely ill-conditioned sensitivity problem, where a very small dependency of the S-parameters to some of the circuit elements translates into great difficulty in finding an accurate value for such an element from the S-parameters. Historically, it was approached using a single, global multivariate error function, with the error function consisting of a weighted sum of the differences between each of the four sets of predicted and measured S-parameters, in a 13-dimensional error landscape. This landscape is ill-conditioned, and exhibits large numbers of local minima with minimum values very close to that of the absolute minimum, and large variations in sensitivity to different variables. In the case of the FET-model, the extraction of element values for the resistive components is particularly difficult, and the

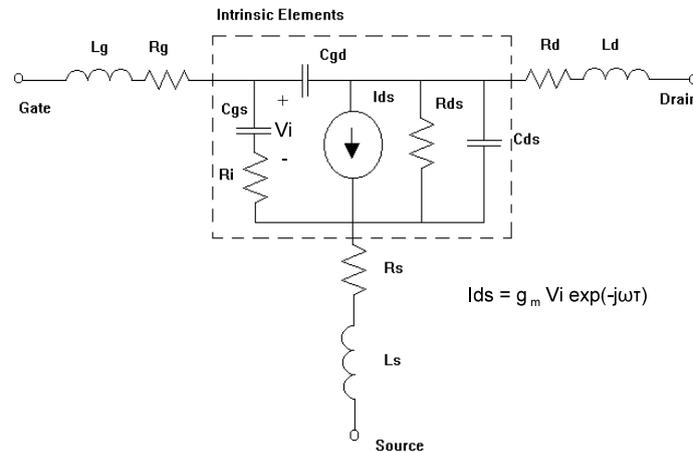


Figure 2.6: 13-Element small-signal FET-model (from [25])

state-of-the-art extraction techniques in 1996 produced very inaccurate results, with errors of up to a factor of 10, for these elements.

The proposed technique called for the separate, systematic minimisation of 13 univariate error functions - one for each circuit element - of the form

$$F_{(j,b)}(\bar{x}_i, z) = \sum_{k=1}^M |S_k(j, b)^{meas} - S_k(j, b)^{calc}(\bar{x}_i, z)|^2 \quad (2.4)$$

where \bar{x}_i represent 12 fixed elements, k the frequency point, (j, b) the S-parameter index, and z the element to be extracted using the i -th error function. As the value obtained for any such single extraction (or minimisation) is dependent on the values of the other 12 elements, the 13 minimisation steps have to be executed multiple times, until the values have converged to within a pre-set error band. Such convergence is by no means guaranteed, as the minimisation problem is extremely ill-natured. To solve this problem, a global error function was formed by adding the error functions for all the S-parameters before each set of 13 minimisation steps, and a principle components sensitivity analysis was performed on this function. This analysis uses the eigenvalues of a Jacobian matrix, formed from the global error function, to determine the sensitivity of the global error function at the point in the parameter space, to each parameter. In this case, the parameters (elements) can then be ordered in terms of decreasing sensitivity, and the 13 error functions then minimised in this order. After each full iteration of 13 functions, a new sensitivity analysis is performed, and the order updated. Such an *adaptive* ordering of the univariate minimisation problems had never been used for this type of extraction at that stage, and proved to be the key to the convergence of the procedure to a global minimum.

The procedure, denoted as *Decomposition-Based Parameter Extraction*, was a significant step forward, and reduced the errors in extraction by orders of magnitude, as can be seen from the table in Fig. 2.7, which compared the new procedure with the state-of-the-art at that time, for a few transistors [26].

TABLE 2 The Percentage Error Made by Two Different Parameter-Extraction Routines

Model Elements	FLR016XV		FSX51X		FLK052XV	
	a	b	a	b	a	b
R_{ds}	0.003	0.316	0.210	2.078	0.067	2.282
C_{ds}	0.002	0.038	0.039	0.353	0.014	0.494
C_{gs}	0.004	0.352	0.244	2.349	0.075	2.650
C_{dg}	0.010	0.724	0.242	2.427	0.129	4.546
R_s	0.099	8.669	3.003	28.042	0.928	31.787
g_m	0.004	0.314	0.221	2.119	0.066	2.331
R_d	0.030	3.111	2.497	23.895	0.752	26.005
L_d	0.002	0.019	0.007	0.090	0.004	0.119
R_g	9.780	884.725	23.756	228.038	12.149	438.795
R_i	0.317	28.641	3.828	36.435	2.699	96.369
L_g	0.001	0.118	0.048	0.388	0.012	0.295
L_s	0.010	0.399	0.034	0.299	0.008	0.193
τ	0.002	0.272	0.155	1.489	0.053	1.847

^a Results obtained with the new parameter-extraction procedure.
^b Results obtained with the 10-step parameter-extraction procedure of Leong et al. [2].

Figure 2.7: Comparison of extraction errors (from [26])

The proposed extraction algorithm was evaluated rigorously in 1997 in a follow-up paper [27]. This paper again used simulated S-parameters, and provided an in-depth look at the performance and accuracy of the technique. Fig. 2.8 for example shows the robustness of the minimisation, with the global error function climbing for more than 70 iterations before converging rapidly.

Of considerable interest was the significant variations in the univariate landscapes of each minimisation problem as a function of the iteration cycle, as is shown in Fig. 2.9 for the variable C_{gs} . This gave previously undocumented insight into the convergence characteristics of this type of extraction, and would lead in future work to much more refined minimisation algorithms.

Finally, the paper introduced an innovative way of evaluating the robustness of such a technique visually, by plotting the start and end values of a variable against the extraction number, for a hundred extractions, each starting with a different set of element values. For perfect robustness, each extraction, irrespective of the starting value, should give the same end value - the end values thus forming a straight line. Fig. 2.10 shows such a plot for two of the most difficult elements. It is immediately clear that the algorithm is very robust for element R_s , but much less so for element R_i .

For the last phase of this work with which I was involved, Dr Van Niekerk teamed up with Dr Dominic Schreurs from FLK052XV GaAs FET, and Dr Peter Winsor from Raytheon in Dallas, to expand the technique to multi-bias models [28], [29]. For this, each element is simply viewed as being bias-dependent, and

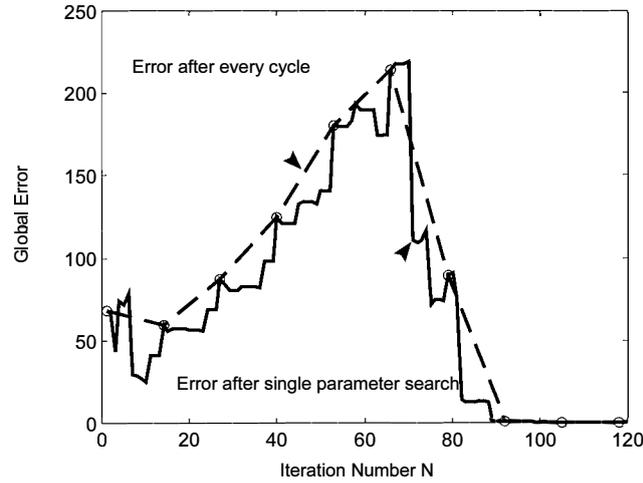


Figure 2.8: Global error function behaviour (from [27])

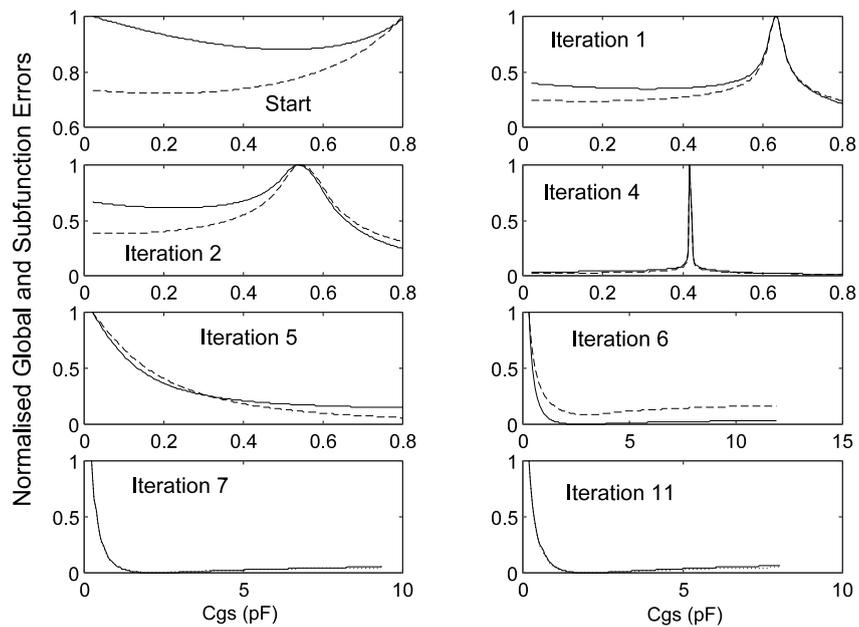


Figure 2.9: Global error function behaviour (from [27])

an extraction performed at each bias point. However, some elements are essentially bias independent, and taken together over all bias points, significant improvements can be obtained for these elements. The paper also introduced 'cold' measurements (or zero bias) into the pool of data, and improvements

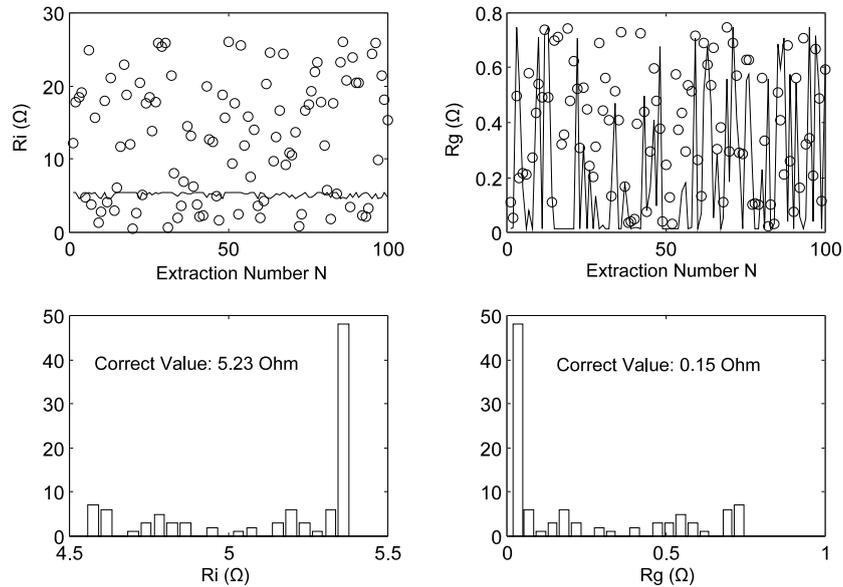


Figure 2.10: Robustness plots and histograms (from [27])

to handle measurement noise. Very accurate models could be obtained in this way, and fundamental insights into the circuit behaviour under different bias conditions.

The Decomposition-Based Extraction proved to have a number of significant advantages to other techniques at the time:

- It only made use of a single global error function for ordering the sub-problems, not for the optimisation itself, making it more immune to local minima and the ill-conditioned nature of the problem than other methods.
- It determined all the elements with optimisation and proved itself to be resistant to the effect of measurement errors.
- It required no assumptions concerning the bias dependencies of the intrinsic elements.
- It was suitable for modelling commercial devices about which very little additional information was known.

The work was my first effort as a PhD supervisor, and proved to be very successful and long-lasting. In total, this set of papers has been cited more than 80 times, with the latest citations in 2010, or two decades after publication. In the most recent citations, the minimisation algorithms have changed, but the basic principles introduced by Dr Van Niekerk and myself are still being

used. Dr Van Niekerk continued this work after completion of his PhD, and would make a distinct name for himself in the world of device modelling.

On a personal level, [27] became my first paper in the prestigious *IEEE Transactions on Microwave Theory and Techniques* - a very important milestone in my career.

2.6 Interpolation-Based Meta-Models of Microwave Components

2.6.1 Adaptively sampled interpolation models

For networks of which the internal structure is not known at all, circuit-based models are difficult to construct, and pure mathematical models, the so-called *meta-models*, offer a much more general set of models. These models use mathematical functions which describe one or more network outputs as a function of one or more variables, with a wide variety of mathematical functions having been proposed. In its most general sense, this forms part of the mature mathematical research area of *approximation functions*, but in the early 2000's, the application to microwave structures and electromagnetic analysis was quite new.

One of the most important goals for this class of applications, is to use the least possible amount of analysis points (or *support points*) in order to establish a model, as the generation of such points using computational electromagnetic analysis is very time-consuming. This problem is intimately connected to the exact type of mathematical function, as some functions naturally approximate typical passive network functions better than others.

In 1999, my PhD student Dr Robert Lehmensiek, myself, and Profs Tom Dhaene (then from Antwerp University, and since at Ghent University) and Annie Cuyt from Antwerp University, initiated a project on using rational interpolation functions to create meta-models for passive microwave structures [30]. Rational functions are particularly well-suited for this type of structure, as most passive structures can be modelled in terms of passive network functions, which are fundamentally of a rational polynomial nature. The project formed part of a larger activity of Prof Dhaene, who had for a number of years been active in the field.

The first phase of this project was the proposal of an algorithm to reduce the amount of support points for a single network function, dependent on one variable only, and to use it in the very popular *Space-Mapping* optimisation technique [31]. As approximation function, the rational polynomial in (2.5) was used, with both numerator and denominator in the form of the recursive partial fraction expansions in (2.6) and (2.7). Here, frequency (f) is the variable, and $R(f)$ represents a network function such as one S-parameter.

$$R(f) = \frac{\sum_{k=0}^{\zeta} p_k f^k}{\sum_{k=0}^{\nu} q_k f^k} = \frac{N_{\zeta}(f)}{D_{\nu}(f)} \quad (2.5)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} N_k &= \psi(f_k, f_{k-1}, \dots, f_0) N_{k-1} + (f - f_{k-1}) N_{k-2} \\ D_k &= \psi(f_k, f_{k-1}, \dots, f_0) D_{k-1} + (f - f_{k-1}) D_{k-2} \end{aligned} \quad (2.6)$$

and

$$\psi_k(f_k, f_{k-1}, \dots, f_0) = \frac{f_i - f_{k-1}}{\psi_{k-1}(f_i, f_{k-1}, \dots, f_0) - \psi_{k-1}(f_{k-1}, f_{k-2}, \dots, f_0)} \quad (2.7)$$

For such a function, the order determines the number of support points, with the location of these points not specified. The order of the function is however unknown, as the network function can be of any complexity. In addition, the location of the support points has a dramatic effect on the accuracy of the final function. The algorithm in [31] proposed the generation of a set of functions of systematically increasing order. The recursive partial fraction expansion form is very well-suited to such an algorithm, as a very natural error function can be found by simply subtracting two successive functions. To increase the order by one, a new support point is then chosen at the point where the two functions of highest order differ the most in the range of interest. The process thus yields an *adaptive sampling technique* for establishing a meta-model. This process is shown for two orders in Fig. 2.11, together with the resulting error function. At each support point, the error function becomes zero. The algorithm continues until the error function is smaller than some arbitrary value over the range of interest. The combination of adaptive sampling and the recursive partial fraction form, requires an order of magnitude smaller number of support points for a certain accuracy, as all the support points are optimally positioned.

To illustrate the power of the procedure, it was used in the Space-Mapping optimisation algorithm to reduce the number of sampling points in the return-loss function of a microwave filter [31]. The result of such an optimisation is shown in Fig. 2.12, together with the actual support points. It is clear that only a few points are required to very accurately model the return loss function.

From my previous work, a very obvious application of the adaptively sampled meta-model technique, was as an intermediate step in the calculation of the poles and zeros of functions, and specifically in the calculation of the propagation constants of higher order modes in guided-wave structures [32],[33]. Such propagation constants are typically numerically calculated by finding the solution to the so-called *characteristic function*, of the form

$$g(\gamma) = \det[Y(\gamma)] = 0 \quad (2.8)$$

6	9.66	3.40000	0.11534
7	8.82	0.13642	0.063537
8	8.88	1.5324	0.078406
9	8.88	3.2876	0.59799
10	11.20	0.89726	0.31784
11	8.42	50.271	0.54331
12	10.34	4.9408	0.0602
13	9.48	0.27409	0.048094
14	11.38	0.27793	0.017606
15	10.90	0.0079483	0.0076628
16	8.22	0.038204	0.002795
17	8.54	0.032615	0.0033645
18	8.10	0.018332	0.0011104
19	10.68	0.0071846	3.4605-e-5

CHAPTER 2. MODELLING

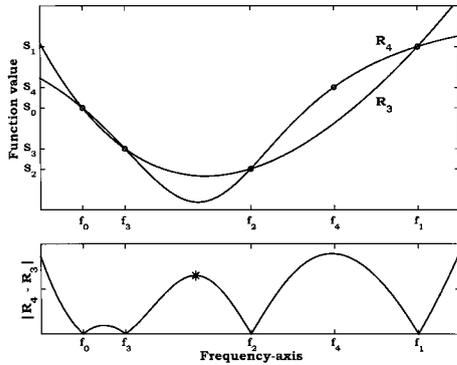


Figure 1 Illustration of the adaptive sampling technique. The interpolation functions $R_2(f)$, $R_3(f)$ and the residual $|R_3(f)|$ are shown. The asterisk indicates the new sample point

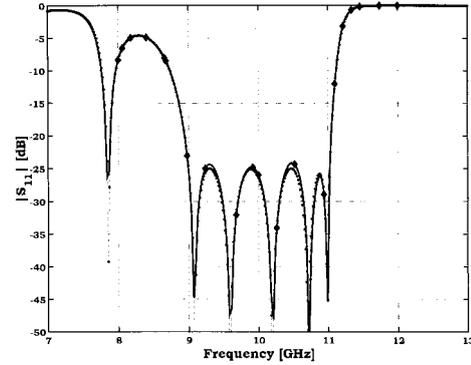


Figure 2 Fine model response (solid line) after the second ASM iteration determined by the adaptive sampling algorithm using the sample points indicated by diamonds. The dotted line represents the optimal response

Figure 2.11: Model responses of successive order (from [31])

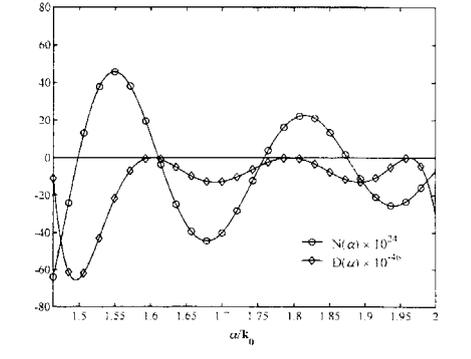
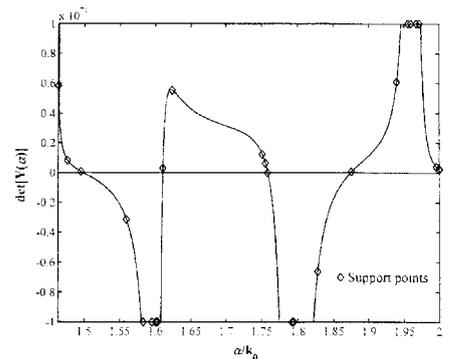
Figure 2.12: Optimised response showing support points (from [31])

IV. USING ADAPTIVE SAMPLING IN ASM
 The ASM technique [12] minimizes the number of fine model simulations in the design optimization by performing optimization of a coarse model instead of the actual EM model, and iteratively establishes a mapping between the spaces of the design parameters of the two models. Define the vectors \mathbf{x}_c and \mathbf{x}_f as the design parameters of the coarse and the fine models, respectively. The complex propagation constant γ_c is the complex propagation constant of the corresponding model responses. Parameter extraction is used to determine \mathbf{x}_f whose response matches the fine model response at \mathbf{x}_c . An even sparser set of points is obtained by applying the adaptive sampling algorithm. $R_{opt}(\mathbf{x}_c)$ is replaced by the adaptively determined $\hat{R}(\mathbf{x}_c)$ where $\hat{R}(\mathbf{x}_c)$ is valid for a certain fine model input parameter vector \mathbf{x}_f over the entire frequency band for all of the scattering parameters. Note that the minimum number of points for the adaptive sampling algorithm requires the convergence of three iterative processes, i.e., 1) the adaptive sampling algorithm determining $\hat{R}(\mathbf{x}_c)$ and \mathbf{x}_f , 2) the parameter extraction step determining \mathbf{x}_f , whose response matches $R_{opt}(\mathbf{x}_c)$ and 3) finding $\hat{R}(\mathbf{x}_c)$ that produces the optimal response according to design specifications (exact mapping). The adaptive algorithm uses the minimum number of frequency sample points $\hat{R}(\mathbf{x}_c)$ to approximate $R_{opt}(\mathbf{x}_c)$ to determine $\hat{R}(\mathbf{x}_c)$. Given $\hat{R}(\mathbf{x}_c)$, an arbitrary large number of frequency points can be chosen to ensure the non-failure of the parameter extraction step. The design of a rectangular waveguide filter with eight capacitive steps is considered. The design specifications for the filter is $|S_{11}| \leq -45$ dB and the passband lies in the range [9 GHz, 11 GHz]. The design is for a standard WR90 rectangular waveguide. The capacitive step

lengths are all chosen 2 mm long. The filter is symmetric with eight optimization variables ($L_1, L_2, L_3, L_4, C_1, C_2, C_3, C_4$) as shown in Figure 2. The fine model is a mode-matching solution combined with the generalized scattering matrix [15]. With a TE_{10} mode incident on a capacitive step in a rectangular waveguide only, TE_n modes (with n even) are necessary for a complete description of the fields [16]. The number of even modes considered on both sides of a waveguide is $2n$. The complex propagation constant γ_c has no noticeable effect on the response of the filter. Because of the symmetry, the generalized scattering matrices of only TE_n modes are used to describe the filter. The mode-matching algorithm. The coarse model is a transmission-line model as shown in Figure 2.17. We use $x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4, x_5, x_6, x_7, x_8$ to describe the scattering parameters, which is not the case here. We can calculate the poles and zeros of the transfer function for several values of the gap opening. Interpolation of these values establishes a closed-form model in terms of waveguide dimensions. Since the ASM technique compares $R_{opt}(\mathbf{x}_c)$ and $R_{asm}(\mathbf{x}_c)$, this mapping is incorporated into the parameter extraction step. The parameter extraction optimizations are driven by a new cubic line search procedure [14]. l_1 norm objectives are used throughout the ASM algorithm. The input parameter \mathbf{x}_c is optimized on the coarse model, also using the Levenberg-Marquardt method. The response R_{asm} is shown in Figure 3 (dotted line). The solid line shows the fine model response $R_{opt}(\mathbf{x}_c)$ with $\mathbf{x}_f^{(1)}$, which was determined by the adaptive sampling algorithm with only 19 frequency samples (diamonds) and interpolating for a smooth response. The two responses differ significantly due to the evanescent modes

Figure 2.13: Typical characteristic function (from [32])

Figure 2.14: Characteristic function as numerator and denominator showing support points (from [32])



The propagation constants of two widely used structures were calculated

in this way - one the microstrip structure shown in Fig. 2.15, and one the finline structure in Fig. 2.16. For the microstrip example, a set of higher-order modes both below and above cut-off is shown in Fig. 2.17, while the finline example shows the propagation constant of the fundamental mode for different dimensions in Fig. 2.18. It should be noted that, even at the time of writing, it is a difficult task to obtain Fig. 2.17 without such an intermediate model.

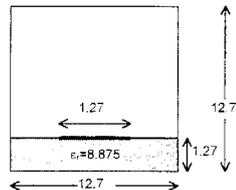


Figure 2.15: Microstrip line cross-section (from [32])

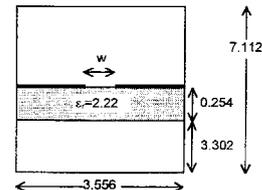


Figure 2.16: Finline cross-section (from [32])

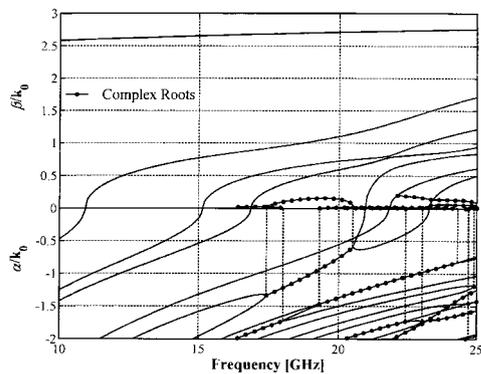


Figure 2.17: Microstrip modes (from [32])

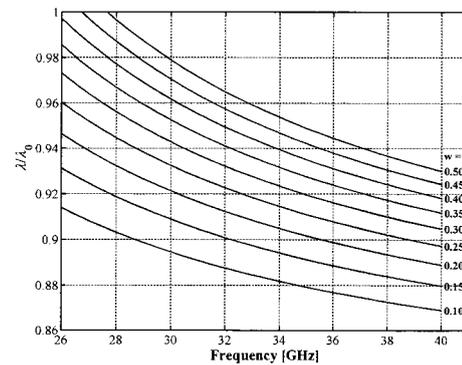


Figure 2.18: Finline modes (from [32])

The next phase of this project was to extend the algorithm to multi-variable and multiple output models. For the multi-variate case, each of the ψ -functions in (2.7) is replaced with a recursive set of functions, each recursion level containing one fewer variable. The mathematical equations for this are quite complex, and is not repeated here, but the reader is referred to [34], [35], and for even more detail, [30].

The adaptive sampling process also has to increase to an n-dimensional landscape, which calls for innovative sampling. In [34], samples were chosen in an increasing fashion along constant-valued lines in the n-dimensional variable space. Again, the reader is referred to the original texts.

CHAPTER 2. MODELLING

LEHMENSIEK AND MEYER: CREATING MULTIVARIATE RATIONAL INTERPOLATION MODELS OF MICROWAVE CIRCUITS

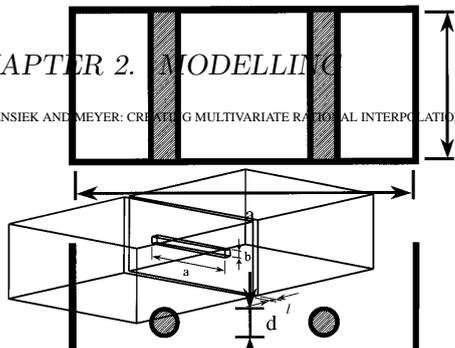


Fig. 9. Iris in rectangular waveguide.

Figure 2.23: Iris in waveguide (from [34])

TABLE IX CONVERGENCE OF $\Re_{21}(f, w)$ DETERMINED BY ASA2 FOR THE IRIS EXAMPLE

Number of support points	$E_{21}(f, w)$ [dB]	
	Mean	Max
1120	-46.2	-7.4
1440	-44.3	-1.5

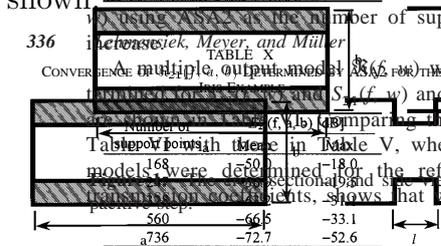


Figure 2.24: Longitudinal slot in common broad wall of two rectangular waveguides

TABLE X CONVERGENCE OF $\Re_{21}(f, w)$ DETERMINED BY ASA2 FOR THE LONGITUDINAL SLOT EXAMPLE

Number of support points	$E_{21}(f, w)$ [dB]	
	Mean	Max
560	-66.5	-33.1
736	-72.7	-52.6

Figure 2.25: Convergence of $\Re_{21}(f, w)$ and $S_{11}(f, w)$ for the longitudinal slot example

TABLE XI CONVERGENCE OF $\Re_{21}(f, w)$ DETERMINED BY ASA2 FOR THE CAPACITIVE STEP EXAMPLE

Number of support points	$E_{21}(f, w)$ [dB]	
	Mean	Max
1120	-46.2	-7.4
1440	-44.3	-1.5

Figure 2.26: Model of a capacitive step in a rectangular waveguide

TABLE XII CONVERGENCE OF $\Re_{21}(f, w)$ DETERMINED BY ASA2 FOR THE CAPACITIVE STEP EXAMPLE

Number of support points	$E_{21}(f, w)$ [dB]	
	Mean	Max
1120	-46.2	-7.4
1440	-44.3	-1.5

Figure 2.27: Model of a capacitive step in a rectangular waveguide

TABLE XIII CONVERGENCE OF $\Re_{21}(f, w)$ DETERMINED BY ASA2 FOR THE CAPACITIVE STEP EXAMPLE

Number of support points	$E_{21}(f, w)$ [dB]	
	Mean	Max
1120	-46.2	-7.4
1440	-44.3	-1.5

Figure 2.28: Model of a capacitive step in a rectangular waveguide

TABLE XIV CONVERGENCE OF $\Re_{21}(f, w)$ DETERMINED BY ASA2 FOR THE CAPACITIVE STEP EXAMPLE

Number of support points	$E_{21}(f, w)$ [dB]	
	Mean	Max
1120	-46.2	-7.4
1440	-44.3	-1.5

Figure 2.29: Model of a capacitive step in a rectangular waveguide

TABLE XV CONVERGENCE OF $\Re_{21}(f, w)$ DETERMINED BY ASA2 FOR THE CAPACITIVE STEP EXAMPLE

Number of support points	$E_{21}(f, w)$ [dB]	
	Mean	Max
1120	-46.2	-7.4
1440	-44.3	-1.5

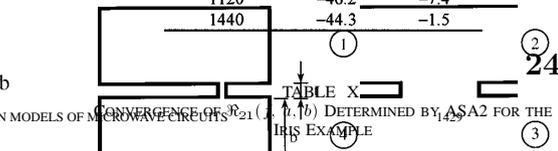


Figure 2.23: Iris in waveguide (from [34])

TABLE IX CONVERGENCE OF $\Re_{21}(f, w)$ DETERMINED BY ASA2 FOR THE IRIS EXAMPLE

Number of support points	$E_{21}(f, w)$ [dB]	
	Mean	Max
1120	-46.2	-7.4
1440	-44.3	-1.5

Figure 2.24: Longitudinal slot in common broad wall of two rectangular waveguides

TABLE X CONVERGENCE OF $\Re_{21}(f, w)$ DETERMINED BY ASA2 FOR THE LONGITUDINAL SLOT EXAMPLE

Number of support points	$E_{21}(f, w)$ [dB]	
	Mean	Max
560	-66.5	-33.1
736	-72.7	-52.6

Figure 2.25: Convergence of $\Re_{21}(f, w)$ and $S_{11}(f, w)$ for the longitudinal slot example

TABLE XI CONVERGENCE OF $\Re_{21}(f, w)$ DETERMINED BY ASA2 FOR THE CAPACITIVE STEP EXAMPLE

Number of support points	$E_{21}(f, w)$ [dB]	
	Mean	Max
1120	-46.2	-7.4
1440	-44.3	-1.5

Figure 2.26: Model of a capacitive step in a rectangular waveguide

TABLE XII CONVERGENCE OF $\Re_{21}(f, w)$ DETERMINED BY ASA2 FOR THE CAPACITIVE STEP EXAMPLE

Number of support points	$E_{21}(f, w)$ [dB]	
	Mean	Max
1120	-46.2	-7.4
1440	-44.3	-1.5

Figure 2.27: Model of a capacitive step in a rectangular waveguide

TABLE XIII CONVERGENCE OF $\Re_{21}(f, w)$ DETERMINED BY ASA2 FOR THE CAPACITIVE STEP EXAMPLE

Number of support points	$E_{21}(f, w)$ [dB]	
	Mean	Max
1120	-46.2	-7.4
1440	-44.3	-1.5

Figure 2.28: Model of a capacitive step in a rectangular waveguide

TABLE XIV CONVERGENCE OF $\Re_{21}(f, w)$ DETERMINED BY ASA2 FOR THE CAPACITIVE STEP EXAMPLE

Number of support points	$E_{21}(f, w)$ [dB]	
	Mean	Max
1120	-46.2	-7.4
1440	-44.3	-1.5

Figure 2.29: Model of a capacitive step in a rectangular waveguide

TABLE XV CONVERGENCE OF $\Re_{21}(f, w)$ DETERMINED BY ASA2 FOR THE CAPACITIVE STEP EXAMPLE

Number of support points	$E_{21}(f, w)$ [dB]	
	Mean	Max
1120	-46.2	-7.4
1440	-44.3	-1.5

Figure 2.30: Model of a capacitive step in a rectangular waveguide

TABLE XVI CONVERGENCE OF $\Re_{21}(f, w)$ DETERMINED BY ASA2 FOR THE CAPACITIVE STEP EXAMPLE

Number of support points	$E_{21}(f, w)$ [dB]	
	Mean	Max
1120	-46.2	-7.4
1440	-44.3	-1.5

Figure 2.31: Model of a capacitive step in a rectangular waveguide

[1] J. W. Bandler, R. M. B. Zhang, "Gradient quadrature fitting," in *IEEE MTT-S 1991*, pp. 1197-1200.

[2] J.-F. Liang and K. A. Zaki, "Curve fitting," in *IEEE AP-S 1993*, pp. 451-454.

[3] J. Carroll and K. Charalambous, "A recursive algorithm for the estimation of narrow-band system responses," in *IEEE AP-S 1993*, pp. 451-454.

[4] A. M. Cuyt, "A recursive algorithm for the estimation of narrow-band system responses," in *IEEE AP-S 1993*, pp. 451-454.

[5] R. S. Adve, T. K. Sarkar, "Application of the narrow-band system response approximation," in *IEEE AP-S 1993*, pp. 451-454.

[6] J. Burdakov, "A recursive algorithm for the estimation of narrow-band system responses," in *IEEE AP-S 1993*, pp. 451-454.

[7] V. Rizzoli, A. Costanzo, C. Cecchi, and D. Masotti, "Computer-aided optimization of broadband nonlinear microwave integrated circuits by the aid of electromagnetically generated look-up tables," *Microwave Opt. Technol. Lett.*, vol. 1, pp. 149-151, 1991.

[8] P. Burrascano, "A recursive algorithm for the estimation of narrow-band system responses," in *IEEE AP-S 1993*, pp. 451-454.

[9] A. H. Zaidi, "A recursive algorithm for the estimation of narrow-band system responses," in *IEEE AP-S 1993*, pp. 451-454.

[10] J. W. Bandler, R. M. B. Zhang, S. H. Chen, J. Song, S. Ye, and Q. J. Zhu, "A recursive algorithm for the estimation of narrow-band system responses," in *IEEE AP-S 1993*, pp. 451-454.

[11] J. Ureel, N. Fache, D. sampling of scattering function," in *IEEE AP-S 1993*, pp. 451-454.

[12] E. G. Kogbetliantz, "Mathematical Methods for Designers," New York: Wiley, 1957.

[13] E. W. Cheney and T. F. approximation, with a formula of Darboux," in *IEEE AP-S 1993*, pp. 451-454.

[14] A. M. Cuyt, "A recursive algorithm for the estimation of narrow-band system responses," in *IEEE AP-S 1993*, pp. 451-454.

[15] A. M. Cuyt and L. Wuyt, "A recursive algorithm for the estimation of narrow-band system responses," in *IEEE AP-S 1993*, pp. 451-454.

[16] P. R. Graves-Morris and *Numer. Math.*, vol. 36, pp. 1-10, 1981.

[17] A. M. Cuyt and B. M. *Computing*, vol. 34, pp. 1-10, 1980.

[18] A. Cuyt, "A recursive algorithm for the estimation of narrow-band system responses," in *IEEE AP-S 1993*, pp. 451-454.

[19] S. F. Peik, R. R. Mansour, "Method and adaptive sampling," *IEEE Trans. Microw. Theory Technol.*, vol. 38, pp. 1-10, 1990.

[20] T. Dhaene, J. Ureel, N. sampling algorithm for planar structures," in *IEEE AP-S 1993*, pp. 451-454.

[21] E. K. Miller, "Modeling of a rectangular waveguide," in *IEEE AP-S 1993*, pp. 451-454.

[22] "Minimizing the number of support points for a multi-variate problem of any of the available techniques was never stable numerically and did not converge to a model that had

many benefits due to its partial fraction nature. The paper in the *IEEE Transactions on Microwave Theory and Techniques* has turned out to be the most cited paper from my group, and is still cited every year a number of times. It provided a benchmark of sampled interpolation models for at least a decade, and is even today still a method to which new algorithms are compared.

2.6.2 Extended meta-models

Dr Lehmensiek's work was continued by another PhD student, Dr Marlize Schoeman, again in cooperation with Prof Dhaene and Prof Cuyt. For the follow-up work, we focused on the application of meta-models to microwave resonators [37]. The analysis of high-Q resonators is quite challenging, as most resonators exhibit multiple resonance modes, and the Q-factor of each of these modes, as well as their centre frequencies, are often of interest. The Q-factors are of special importance, as they determine the performance of any device which utilises a resonator, such as filters, oscillators, etc. Typical computational analysis of Q-values performs a loss-less eigenmode analysis to obtain the resonance frequencies and the field distributions at each frequency, and then uses the loss-less surface currents to calculate loss, and the loss-less fields to calculate stored energy. From these two values, the Q is obtained as a simple ratio. This approximated technique is used because the eigen-solution of a structure is much more difficult if lossy boundaries (or complex impedance boundaries) are included in the basic analysis.

For structures containing bulk loss mechanisms, such as dielectric, and radiation or surface-wave losses, such as open microstrip, the approximate technique does however not work, as loss has to be included in the basic formulation. This also means that eigenmode analysis is mostly not possible, except under very specific conditions. Instead, the calculation of resonant frequency and Q are typically done by analysing a structure which consists of a port, or two ports, coupling lightly to the resonator, and calculating the Q from an $|S_{21}|$ or $|S_{11}|$ sweep against frequency, as shown in Fig. 2.29. In principle, the resonance frequencies are simply read off from such a sweep, as the points of maximum transmission or minimum reflection, and the Q is calculated by the ratio of the magnitude at that point and the 3dB-bandwidth.

CHAPTER 4—CALCULATION OF RESONANT FREQUENCIES

43

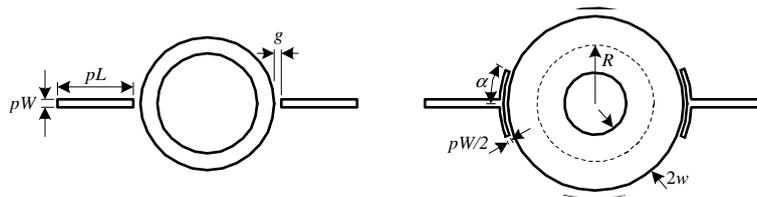


Fig. 4.7. Excitation used to construct ring resonators of normalised ring width $w/R = 0.1$ and $w/r = 0.6$.

Figure 2.29: Input and output coupled ring resonators (from [38])

and Vector Fitting) are compared with respect to their ability to predict the resonance frequencies of a loaded microwave ring resonator. The prediction of both fundamental and higher-order resonances are investigated and results are verified against predictions obtained from commercial software and measurement. In addition, a new algorithm for the extraction of the resonant frequencies from the rational approximation of the scattering parameter magnitude plot is proposed. The second study investigates the correctness of the interpolation function, by focusing on asymmetries in the discretisation causing unwanted mode splitting.

4.2.1 Study 1—Investigation of the Accuracy of Different Model Predictions

When a loaded microstrip ring resonator is loosely coupled to its feed lines, the coupling gap capacitances do not greatly affect the intrinsic resonant frequencies of the ring. Using this model

For high-Q resonators, this is however very difficult, as the calculation depends very strongly on both the exact position and the exact magnitude of a very sharp peak in either $|S_{21}|$ or $|S_{11}|$. To find this position and magnitude accurately, the frequency sweep should include this exact point, within parts of one percent - however, this point is not known beforehand. Most commercial solvers therefore struggle to do this. This problem is even worse in measurements, as a measurement is always limited to fixed frequency points set up at the start of the measurement, during calibration, and to position a point at the exact resonance frequency is impossible.

In [37], the basic principle applied was to first approximate an $|S_{21}|$ or $|S_{11}|$ curve, using adaptive sampling and a meta-model, and then find the resonance point from the curve. In this way, the CEM analysis (or measurement sweep) need not include the exact point. The Q-value is then determined from the skirts of the curves in the vicinity of this point, and not from the exact value at the resonance point.

The first attempts at this exploited some of the characteristics of the Method-of-Moments (MoM) to fit models to computed data points for ring resonators specifically, across a frequency range which includes a number of resonance points [38],[39]. The advantage of this approach is clear in Fig. 2.30, where an interpolation-based curve is compared to one using equally spaced frequency points. It is evident that, in the case of discrete points, the accuracy of the resonant point will be completely determined by the frequency spacing, which quickly become prohibitive if accuracies better than 0.1% are required. In addition, some resonant points are inevitably completely invisible. The interpolated curve, on the other hand, naturally predicts this extremely accurately using a small number of points.

CHAPTER 4 - CALCULATION OF RESONANT FREQUENCIES

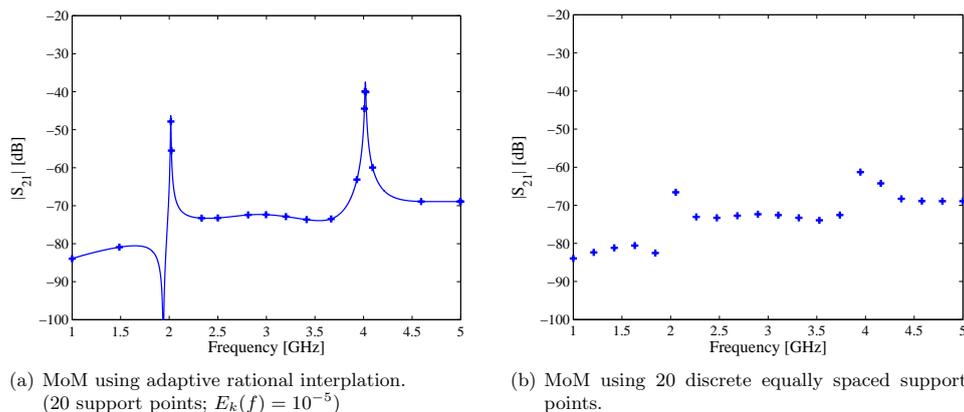


Fig. 4.8. Comparison of S_{21} magnitude responses obtained using an equal number of samples for the adaptive rational interpolation method (from [39]) and the discrete frequencies.

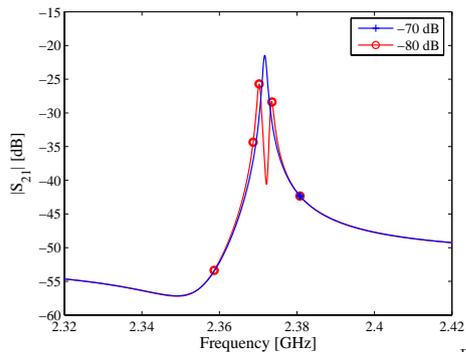
Figure 2.30: Fit of interpolation model (from [39])

To obtain the resonant frequencies numerically from the interpolant of the S-parameters, use is made of the fact that the interpolant can be evaluated at any frequency point with little extra cost. An initial estimate of f_0 is taken from the S-parameter plot. The interpolant is then evaluated at a large number of equally spaced points (e.g. 100 Hz apart) around f_0 . The frequency associated with the maximum magnitude then becomes the new resonant frequency. If this frequency falls on the first or last point in the evaluated interval, the S-parameter slope is either decreasing or increasing and the process is repeated. Otherwise, the interval includes the correct resonance value and the spacing is decreased to 10% of the previous interval spacing, i.e. 10 Hz. The process then repeats itself and the algorithm terminates when the frequency spacing reaches the user defined accuracy of e.g. 0.1 Hz.

Table 4.4 shows the results of this experiment for Ring #1, while Table 4.5 lists the results for Ring #2. The maximum discretisation size L was set to $\lambda/35$ at the maximum frequency in

Fig. 4.10(a) shows the S-parameter response around the TM_{110} resonant frequency for a -70 dB and a -80 dB error in the interpolant. For the -80 dB error case, an unexpected mode splitting is observed, in this case traceable to a slightly asymmetric MoM solution. However, this phenomenon is absent from the -70 dB error case, where the accuracy of the fit is only slightly

phenomenon of *mode splitting*, where one resonance is split into two apparent resonances due to the convergence error limit being set at too small a value, as shown in Fig. 2.31. The other is *masked modes*, where the close proximity of two adjacent modes causes one to become 'hidden' by the other, as shown in Fig. 2.32. The surface current magnitudes at first resonance were analysed and plotted along symmetrical lines around the ring. The currents, as shown in Fig. 4.10(b), are anti-metrical around the ring. Upon mirroring one set of data around the zero position, it was found that the currents indeed



(a) Unwanted mode splitting visible at the first resonant mode, TM_{110} .

Figure 2.31: Split modes (from [39])

Fig. 4.10. Mode splitting caused by

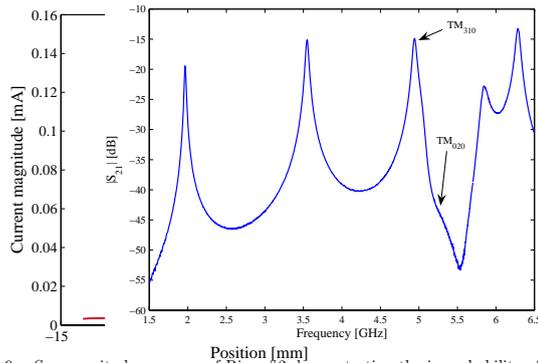


Fig. 4.9. S_{21} magnitude response of Ring #2 demonstrating the improbability of correctly identifying the mode number, magnitude along symmetrical lines around the ring.

Figure 2.32: Masked modes (from [80])
 extracted from the S-parameter response as the TM_{310} and the TM_{020} modes were too closely spaced in frequency. This is shown in Fig. 4.9 where the TM_{020} mode disappears below the skirts of the more strongly coupled TM_{310} mode.

For multiple modes on one structure, the identification of modes become important in addition to their resonance frequencies. To automatically recognise modes from field patterns requires a correlation between an 'ideal' field and the calculated field, at the exact resonant frequency. In the case of open ring resonators, the 'ideal' fields are calculated using magnetic wall boundaries on the outer circumference of the ring. Two sets of results are shown in Figs. 2.33 and 2.34, one set for a thin ring, and one for a thick ring. The result in Fig. 2.34 was particularly satisfactory, as both the CEM analysis and the meta-model have to be almost exact to achieve reliable recognition of higher order modes on thick rings.

Figs. 2.35 and 2.36 show the resonance frequencies for thin and thick rings as functions of ring diameter. Again, the algorithm could create these complete graphs in a fully automated way.

The next step was to calculate the Q-factors using the interpolated curves. By a first order partial fraction expansion, it is simple to show that the form of any of the scattering parameters in the vicinity of a resonant peak, can be approximated as

$$S_{ij} = \frac{a_i t + a_2}{a_3 t + 1} \quad t = \frac{2(f - f_L)}{f_L} \quad (2.9)$$

where f_L is the support point closest to the resonance point. In what is known as the *TQMF* method, the constants a_1 to a_3 are found using a least-squares fit of the analysis data in the vicinity of the resonant point to (2.9), from which the Q can be simply found as the imaginary part of a_3 .

Resonant Mode	f_0 [GHz]	% Cross-Correlation	Band of Variance	2 nd Highest % Cross-Correlation	Band of Variance
TM ₁₁₀	2.0537	92.50	0.0235	83.83	0.0020
TM ₂₁₀	4.0866	98.61	0.0237	83.94	0.0015
TM ₃₁₀	6.1295	96.71	0.0224	81.28	0.0007
TM ₄₁₀	8.1851	99.08	0.0229	84.08	0.0011
TM ₅₁₀	10.2157	99.01	0.0219	81.06	0.0013

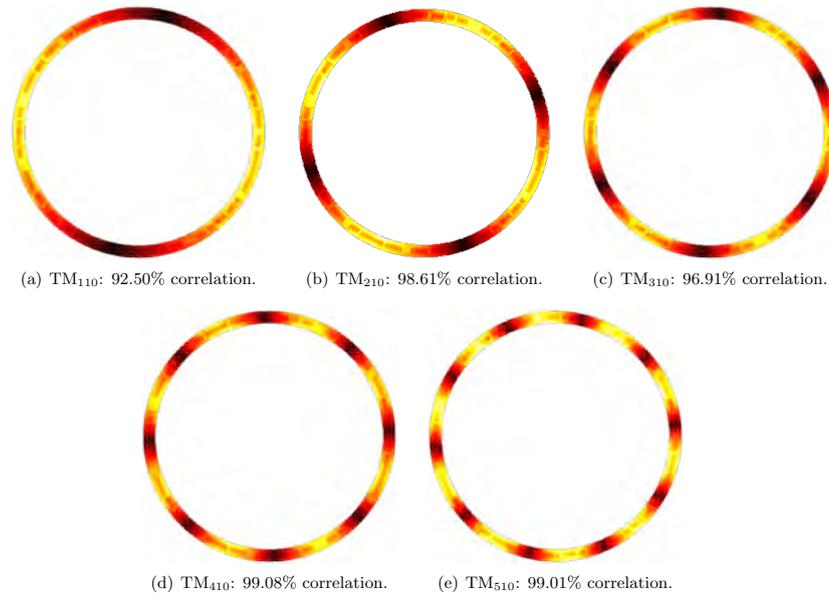


Fig. 6.9. Resonant modes identified using cross-correlation and variance parameters. (Ring parameters: $R = 16.9$ mm, $w/R = 0.05$)

Figure 2.33: Identification of modes for thin ring (from [38])

percentage quite low (78.15%), but it is also worse than some of the other mode correlations achieved. Since none of these correlations are very good either (maximum of 89.30%), it was suggested to use the band of variance instead, which indeed identified the correct resonant modes.

Referring to the formulation in the previous section [30], the full one-dimensional approximation function can be simplified in the vicinity of a resonant point [38],[39], to

It was mentioned previously that the proposed technique is limited to the availability of an analytical field analysis model from which the ideal mode patterns can be computed. An example is the square or meander ring resonator. In fact, so far only the annular ring resonator has the field theory derivation for its frequency modes [74]. For square ring resonators, it is difficult

$$R(f) = S_0 + \frac{f}{\psi_1(f_1; f_0) + \theta_N(f_L)} \quad (2.10)$$

where f_L is the support point closest to the resonance point, S_0 and S_1 the two other closest points, and $\theta(f_L)$ is the approximation function evaluated at f_L . It is clear that this form is the same as that of (2.9), and that the Q can therefore be obtained by simply equating the coefficients. No least-squares fit is however required, and the same interpolation function can be used for each resonant point. An example of this is shown in Fig. 2.37.

The results of an example ring resonator is shown in Fig. 2.38, where the interpolation-based method is compared to the TQMF method. Of note is the small number of support points required for good accuracy.

At this stage, another interpolation method known as *Vector-Fitting* became popular for microwave meta-models. In [40] and [41], this method was shown to compare very favourably to the rational function approach, especially for one variable, and for the modelling of resonance frequencies and Q-values. Extended procedures to accommodate noisy data, such as obtained from measurement, were also developed [42] and [43]. The use of Vector-Fitting was also shown to be applicable to the extraction of Spice models [44].

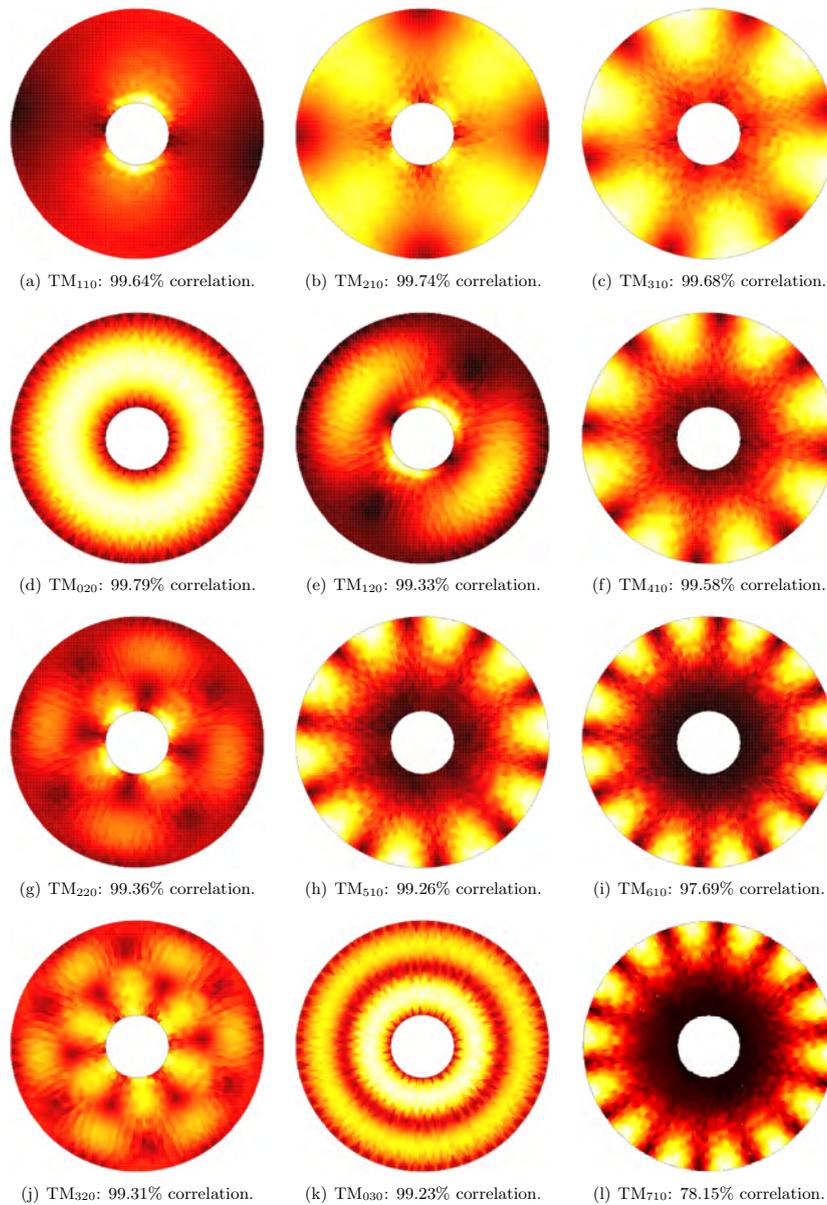


Fig. 6.10. Resonant modes identified using correlation and variance parameters. (Ring parameters:

$R_o = 18.75 \text{ mm}$, $R_i = 16 \text{ mm}$, $R_f = 0.6$)

Figure 2.34: Identification of modes for thick ring (from [38])

As a final step, multi-variate models for resonance frequencies and Q-values were developed using the expanded multi-variate rational interpolation technique [37]. As before, this work is mathematically dense, and beyond the scope of this dissertation. The reader is referred to [37].

This follow-up work on meta-modelling was very valuable in terms of cementing the basic algorithms. To some extent, the capabilities of commercial EM-solvers have made parts of the work obsolete, but it is still used in-house

CHAPTER 2. MODELLING

CHAPTER 6 — MULTI-DIMENSIONAL ADAPTIVE INTERPOLATION

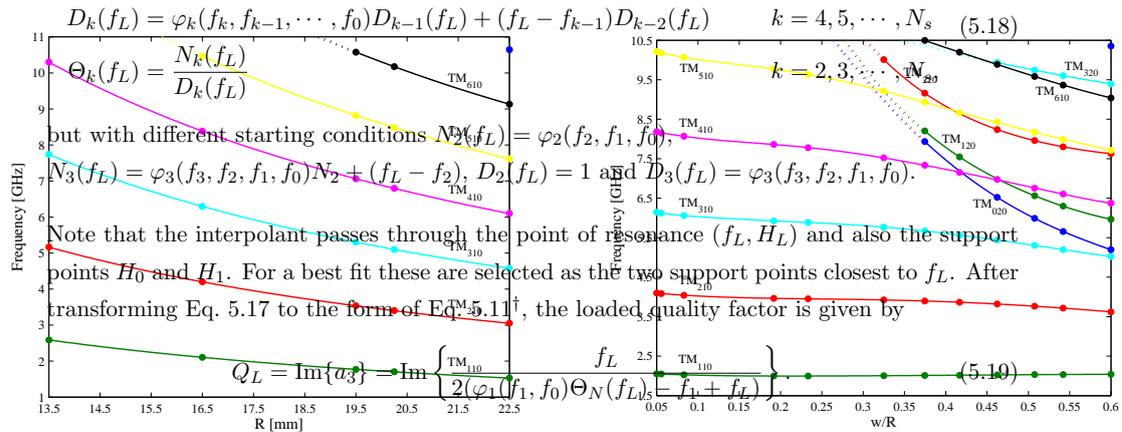


Fig. 6.14. Two-dimensional plots of the improved three-point rational interpolation method for the two resonant modes (Ring parameters: $R = [13.5, 22.5]$ mm, $w/R = [0.05, 0.6]$; $f_0 = 1.5$ GHz, $f_L = 10.5$ GHz)

Fig. 6.14 plots the first six TM_{n10} mode frequencies that were successfully identified and approximated. Convergence of these models was reached within only 5 geometrical samples ($N_x = 5$), while the total number of CFM analyses added up to $N_{CFM} = 163$ with a total of 163 resonant frequencies computed. Table 6.6 lists the first six resonant frequency pairs. Table 6.6 lists the first six resonant frequency pairs. Table 6.6 lists the first six resonant frequency pairs.

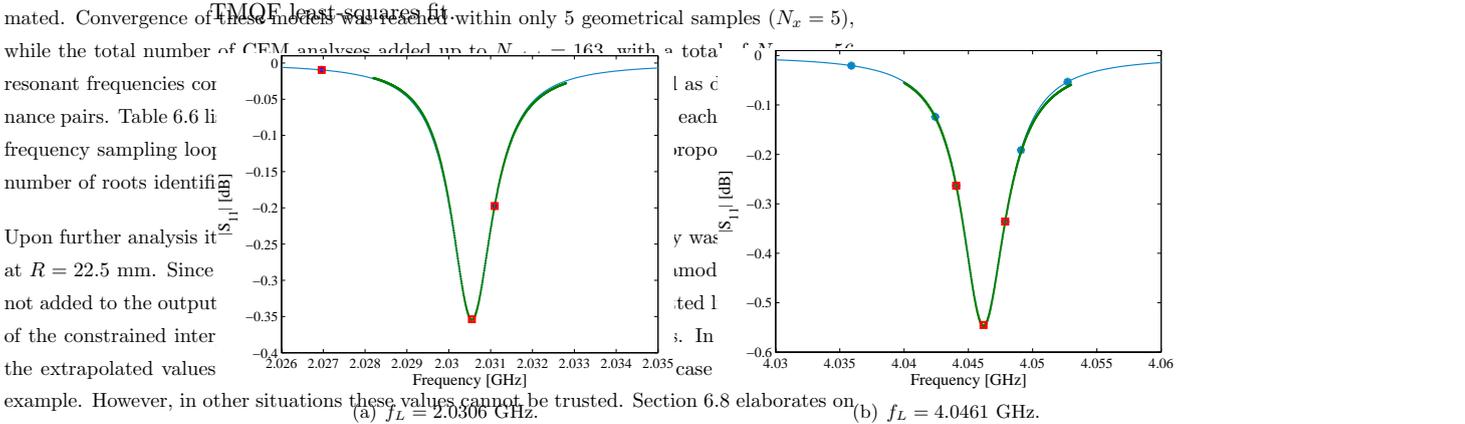


Fig. 5.5. Improved three-point rational interpolation fit on S_{11} data.

Figure 2.37: Calculation of Q (from [38])

TABLE 6.6

NUMBER OF SAMPLES REQUIRED TO REACH CONVERGENCE IN EACH OF THE ADAPTIVE FREQUENCY SAMPLING

5.2.1 Study 1: Verification of the Three-Point Method

(RING PARAMETERS: $R = [13.5 \text{ mm}, 22.5 \text{ mm}]$, $w/R = 0.05$; $f = [1 \text{ GHz}, 11 \text{ GHz}]$)

Number of Geometrical Samples	Three-Point Interpolation	Rational Interpolation Method	Substrate Parameters: $\epsilon_r = 10.2$, $\tan(\delta) = 0$; Ring Parameters: $R = [13.5, 22.5]$ mm, $w/R = 0.05$; $f_0 = 1.5$ GHz, $f_L = 10.5$ GHz
4	19.50	32	$f_0 = 4.6497$ GHz
22.50	33	38	$f_0 = 1.4328$ GHz

To establish high values of Q_L , losses were suppressed by setting $\tan(\delta) = 0$ for the microstrip surface.

Error (dB)	Points	Three-Point Interpolation	Three-Point Support	S_{11}
-60	13	1172.0	1170.5	1223.0
-80	17	1172.1	1170.6	1146.1
-100	42	1173.5	1172.0	1139.7

Figure 2.38: Resonant frequency and Q results (from [39])

vi. CONCLUSION

In this article a rational interpolation model (Thiele-type continued fractions) was exploited to accurately predict the characteristics f_0 and Q of a microstrip ring resonator. Calculation of resonant frequencies was performed using two techniques: one predicting the natural frequencies of a loaded resonator (the natural frequency problem) and the other using the S-parameter response of a loosely coupled loaded resonator. For the calculation of Q -values, a new three-point rational interpolant function in the region of resonance was proposed. This technique utilises already known interpolant coefficients and provides a direct fit and solution to the Q -factors.

REFERENCES

1. T. Dhaene, J. Ureel, N. Faché, and D. de Zutter, Adaptive Frequency Sampling Algorithm for Fast and Accurate S-parameter Modeling of General Planar Structures, IEEE MTT-S Dig 3 (1995), 1427–1430.
2. R. Lehmensiek and P. Mever, An efficient adaptive frequency sampling algorithm for fast and accurate calculation of the natural frequencies of two different modes are numerically close. However, this poses no significant problem, as the model for that mode is simply built using less data. A disadvantage, however, might be that the constrained region of interpolation ends up being more constrained than is actually the case (see TM₀₂₀ and TM₁₂₀). Also, the algorithm might require selection of a few more geometrical samples with $k = 4, 5, \dots, N_s$.
3. R. Lehmensiek, Efficient adaptive sampling applied to multivariate, multiple output rational interpolation models, with applications in electromagnetics-based device modelling, Ph.D. dissertation, University of Stellenbosch, 2001.
4. I. Wolff and N. Knoppik, Microstrip ring resonator, Electron Lett 7 (1971), 779–781.
5. S. C. Lee and D. L. Rosehman, Mode analysis for microstrip ring resonators, IEEE Trans Microwave Theory Tech MTT-21 (1973), 487–489.
6. R.P. Owens, Curvature effect in microstrip ring resonators, Electron Lett 12 (1976), 356–357.
7. W. Sun, K.-M. Chen, D.P. Nyquist, and E.J. Rothwell, Determination of the Natural Modes for a Rectangular Plate, IEEE Trans Antennas Propagat 38 (1990), 643–652.
8. Y. Long, Determination of the Natural Frequencies for Conducting Rectangular Boxes, IEEE Trans Antennas Propagat 42 (1994), 1016–1021.
9. C.A. Olley and T.E. Rozzi, Systematic characterisation of the spectrum of unilateral finline, IEEE Trans Microwave Theory Tech 34 (1986), 1147–1156.
10. V.A. Labay and J. Bornemann, Matrix singular value decomposition for pole-free solutions of homogenous matrix equations as applied to numerical modelling

between my group and that of Profs Dhaene and Cuyt.

2.7 Conclusion

My work on modelling has constituted a significant part of my career, and has led to strong research cooperation with international groups. The principles involved in computational electromagnetic modelling, circuit model parameter extraction and meta-models also occur in a wide range of related fields, especially that of the design of passive circuits. All the methods discussed in this chapter represented state-of-the-art solutions at the time they were published, and together they served to establish my group internationally in the area of modelling.

The work has continued through the activities of my graduated students, both in academia and industry. In particular, Dr Lehmensiek (in his role at the company EMSS Antennas) and Prof de Villiers have applied these techniques to the design of the reflector array dishes of the Square-Kilometre-Array antenna in South Africa, the biggest electronic engineering and science project in the history of South Africa. Currently, Prof de Villiers has a large research programme in this field, with myself restarting efforts in this field - now in the area of statistical modelling as applied to manufacturing yield of microwave devices.

Chapter 3

Microwave Filters

3.1 Introduction

The design of microwave filters has been the most constant activity throughout my research and professional consulting career. From my very first research project, up to the writing of this dissertation, filters of varying form, frequency and type have permeated my work.

3.2 Bandpass filters utilising higher-order modes

The Mode-Matching codes developed in the first years of my research career naturally led me to filter structures which in some way utilised, or suffered from, higher order mode effects. While multiple modes exist on all guiding structures, dimensions for structures are normally chosen in such a way that all except one of these modes are below cut-off, as most design algorithms are based on single-mode transmission line models. A number of applications where multiple propagating modes were not only allowed, but used to good effect, have however been proposed through the years. Examples of this include the use of dual- and triple-mode cavities to reduce the size of waveguide filters, the improvement of aperture distributions in antenna feeds for reflector type antennas, and the shaping of power distributions in waveguides for spatial amplifier applications. Multiple propagating modes have also been utilised effectively to implement complicated designs elegantly, such as cross-coupled filters.

The design of devices utilising multiple propagating modes are complicated by a few problems. In general, a typical discontinuity separating two waveguides A and B is represented by an $n \times m$ scattering matrix, for which the equivalent circuit in Fig. 3.1 was proposed in [45]. Here, $W(n, m)$ represents a transformer ratio directly linked to the mode-matching method, and $Z_A(n)$

the design of waveguide devices using multiple propagating modes

Petrie Meyer¹, Christopher A Vale¹, Werner Steyn¹

and $Z_B(m)$ the impedance of modes n and m in waveguides A and B respectively. In the case of single-mode propagation, only two of the terminating impedances are replaced by ports, resulting in a standard two-port network.

This paper presents a number of strategies which can be used for designing waveguide devices with multiple propagating modes. Three types of devices are highlighted by way of example: namely bandstop filters for microwave heating applications, narrow band coupled resonator filters, and pulse feeds.

In the case of multiple propagating modes, the equivalent circuit is a multiport system with each mode represented by one port, and all the ports linked together through a complicated circuit. With the exception of the even and odd mode analysis, which can be used for the approximate formal synthesis techniques exist for cascaded n -ports. Also general optimization techniques have great difficulty with these structures, as one dimensional change normally affects a number of output parameters, some positively and others negatively.

I. INTRODUCTION

Devices exist on all guiding structures, but are normally chosen in such a way that all except the fundamental modes are below cut-off, as most design is based on single-mode transmission lines. A number of applications where multiple propagating modes are not only allowed, but used to good effect, have been proposed through the years. Examples of this include dual and triple mode cavities to reduce the size of filters [1,2,3], the improvement of aperture antenna feeds for reflector type antennas [4,5], and the shaping of power distributions in spatial amplifier applications [6,7]. Multiple propagating modes have also been utilized effectively to simplify complicated designs elegantly, such as cross-coupled filters.

Finally, the dimensions of a given problem are under the control of the designer, forcing him to utilize higher order modes.

Devices utilizing multiple propagating modes are often defined by a few problems. In general, a typical design problem is separating two waveguides A and B is represented by an $n \times m$ port scattering matrix, which can be represented by the equivalent circuit shown in Fig. 1 [8]. This represents a transformer ratio directly linked to the coupling method, and $Z_A(n)$ and $Z_B(m)$ the terminating impedances of modes n and m in waveguides A and B respectively.

In the case of single-mode propagation, only two terminating impedances are replaced by ports, resulting in a standard two-port network. All the other impedances are replaced by ports, resulting in a standard two-port network. All the other impedances are replaced by ports, resulting in a standard two-port network.

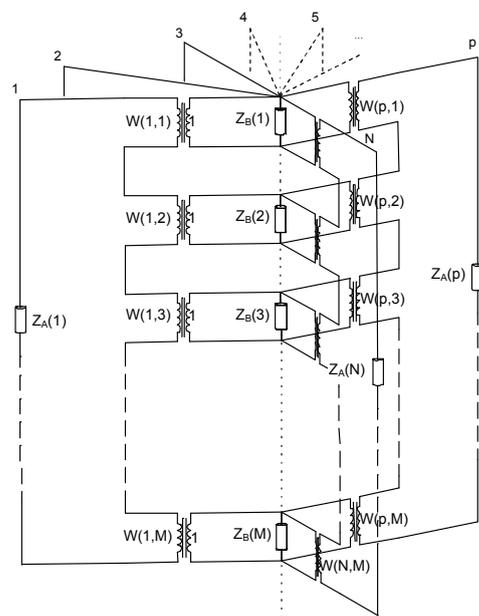


Figure 3.1: Circuit model for a multi-mode discontinuity (from [45])

This paper will present a number of techniques that have been developed by the authors over the past few years to approach the design problem of devices with multiple propagating modes. The techniques are mostly a combination of synthesis and intelligent optimisation, and rely on the careful choice of representations for one block and all the ports linked together through a complicated circuit. With the exception of the even- and odd-mode analysis of the field patterns in different structures, and are very important as they are normally under the control of the designer, and as the wrong choices result in building blocks which are just too complicated to use.

My first project focusing on devices which utilise higher order modes, was on improving the design of classical multi-mode coupled waveguide cavity filters, which had been used especially in space applications since the 1970's, but which were at the time still mostly designed using equivalent models from as far back as the 1940's, or experimentation.

¹with the Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering, Stellenbosch University of Stellenbosch, Private Bag 11, Matieland, Stellenbosch, South Africa, Email: pmeyer@sun.ac.za

The history of coupled waveguide cavity filters dates from 1948, when the description and implementation of a direct-coupled cavity filter by Fano and Lawson, consisting of a number of waveguide cavities separated by thin inductive irises, was proposed. The irises were designed using the small aperture theory derived by Bethe in 1944 and the measured polarisability data presented by Cohn in 1952. The possibilities of reducing filter size by allowing more than one mode to be resonant in the same cavity, were soon realised, and in 1951 Lin demonstrated a fifth order filter realised in a single cylindrical cavity. At this time prototypes were deemed to be impractical, since the authors could not achieve independent control of the wanted degenerate modes, as well as suppression of unwanted modes.

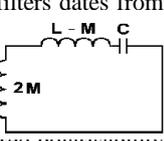
This was the state of coupled cavity filter design until the launch of the first commercial satellite communications systems in the late 1960s. New technology calling for reduction in filter size and weight was required, sparking new interest in the use of multi-mode coupled cavity filters. The first dual-mode cavity filter was developed by Atia and Williams at Comsat Laboratories in 1970 and showed that multi-mode cavity filters were indeed commercially viable, and could reduce the number of physical cavities (and thereby the size and weight) of standard coupled cavity filters by a factor of two. Another significant advantage of multi-mode cavities is that the structure allows coupling to non-adjacent resonators. This can be achieved by using cross-shaped irises or coupling screws. This cross-coupling between resonators results in transfer function zeros along the real or imaginary axis, thereby permitting the realisation of elliptical and linear phase filter functions. It was therefore possible to improve filter performance without increasing the physical dimensions, at the cost of increased design complexity. After dual-mode filters, the obvious step towards the design of triple-mode filters and even quad-mode filters was taken. For such filters, three or four inter-cavity coupling coefficients must be controlled uniquely and simultaneously by an iris containing more than one aperture.

At the time, numerical electromagnetic techniques had been introduced, but were still only viable for very simple structures. In 1999, myself and a PhD student Dr Werner Steyn, proposed a combination of the numerical Mode-Matching technique for cylindrical waveguides, adaptively sampled rational interpolation models, and the so-called *Space-Mapping* optimisation technique for the design of multi-mode waveguide filters [45],[46],[47].

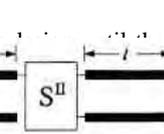
The Mode-Matching analysis of cylindrical waveguides with off-centre irises coupling two cavities is very intensive, firstly due to the evaluation of Bessel functions for the calculation of the two-dimensional field distributions in each guide, and secondly as off-centre positioning requires the use of a high number of modes. It was therefore of high importance to reduce the number of EM-analysis steps as much as possible.

To solve the coupling factors for a coupled cavity system, the basic structure in Fig. 3.2 is modelled as shown in Fig. 3.3 for the case of a single mode in each

filters dates from



reducing the scattering matrix... the roots of the rational function...



the roots of the rational function... the roots of the rational function...

the roots of the rational function... the roots of the rational function...

the roots of the rational function... the roots of the rational function...

the roots of the rational function... the roots of the rational function...

the roots of the rational function... the roots of the rational function...

the roots of the rational function... the roots of the rational function...

accuracy of coupling coefficients determined by small aperture theory and the mode-matching method. For simple geometries where only one coupling mode is evaluated, errors of up to 10% on the part of the small aperture theory was found, clearly illustrating the importance of numerical methods for iris design.

Today, most designers follow a two-step procedure to design coupled cavity filters. In the first stage, the iris dimensions are determined by using either small aperture theory, or by calculating the two natural resonant frequencies of each mode directly by the numerical method. In the second stage, the full filter is optimised with a numerical code.

B. Choice of functional blocks
In narrow band filter applications, the functional blocks are chosen to couple specific modes on both sides of the block to make a linearly phase-matched coupling. The problem is made a linearly phase-matched coupling, as the coupling block is embedded on both sides in resonant sections of waveguide. Figure 14 shows the structure designed to work at only one or two frequencies, with at the most four modes on either side. A typical functional block of the thin cylindrical iris coupling two sections of cylindrical waveguide, shown in Fig. 10.

(b) To limit the amount of EM evaluations needed to determine the roots, the function in Eq. 1 is first replaced by a rational interpolation model, created by an adaptive sampling algorithm. This algorithm is remarkably effective, and generates very accurate approximations to the function with typically 8-10 samples.
(c) The optimisation of the structure is performed by Aggressive Space Mapping, with the coarse model being that given by small aperture theory, and the full EM analysis the fine model.

D. Results
Figure 10: Typical Coupling Iris
Figure 3.6: Typical cylindrical iris

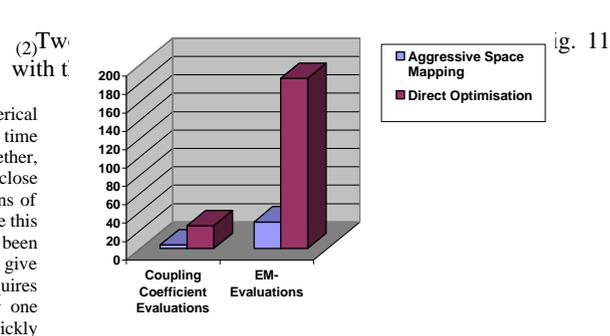


Figure 3.7: Performance of Space-Mapping optimisation (from [45]).
A multimodal diplexer, consisting of three cavities which support the input modes and an output port which couples to different modes at the two diplexer frequencies. This enhances isolation between the two channels of the diplexer, as a spatial isolation is combined with a filter characteristic. A photograph of the diplexer is shown in Fig. 16, with measured results in Fig. 17.

To illustrate the power of this integrated technique, a diplexer was designed which supported quadruple modes in the centre cavity, two at each frequency of the diplexer. The big advantage of this structure, was the orthogonal nature of the two input modes at the common port feed, which increased the isolation between channels substantially. At the time this was the first diplexer which made use of orthogonal field decoupling. The coupling diagram of the diplexer is shown in Fig. 3.9, with the actual manufactured structure shown in Fig. 3.10. The complexity of the structure is obvious.

The measured results of the diplexer is shown in Fig. 3.11. The excellent isolation in the lower passband is clearly visible, as well as the good pass-band

advantage that the roots of the rational function can be calculated almost directly due to the nature of the function [33].

use only part of the design cycle. To obtain filter dimensions in iris structure must be optimised to produce the correct coupling factors for multiple modes, a very difficult multi-parameter, multi-objective problem. This phase was implemented using the (then recently developed) Space-Mapping technique [46]. The problem is made a linearly phase-matched coupling, as the coupling block is embedded on both sides in resonant sections of waveguide. Figure 14 shows the structure designed to work at only one or two frequencies, with at the most four modes on either side. A typical functional block of the thin cylindrical iris coupling two sections of cylindrical waveguide, shown in Fig. 10.

(b) To limit the amount of EM evaluations needed to determine the roots, the function in Eq. 1 is first replaced by a rational interpolation model, created by an adaptive sampling algorithm. This algorithm is remarkably effective, and generates very accurate approximations to the function with typically 8-10 samples.
(c) The optimisation of the structure is performed by Aggressive Space Mapping, with the coarse model being that given by small aperture theory, and the full EM analysis the fine model.

D. Results
Figure 10: Typical Coupling Iris
Figure 3.6: Typical cylindrical iris

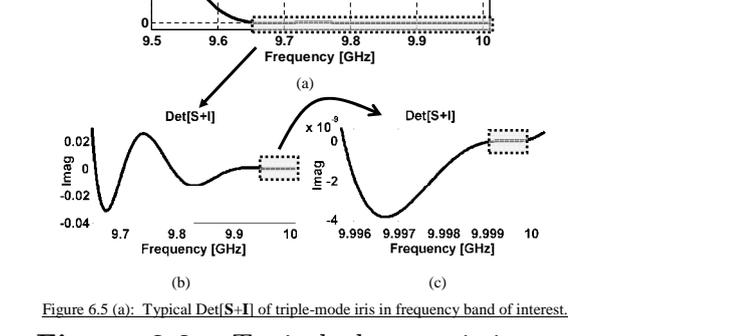
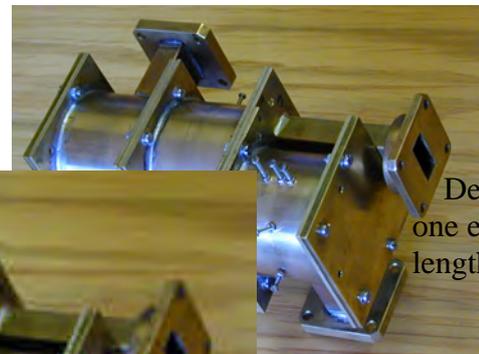
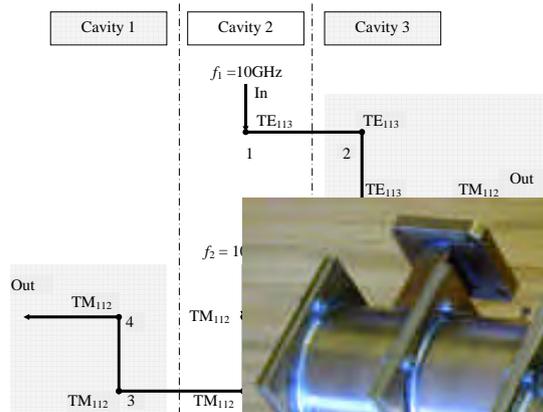


Figure 3.8: Typical characteristic polynomial (from [46]).
Once the natural resonant frequencies have been determined, the specific mode that is at resonance must be identified using the procedure introduced above. This requires a single EM-evaluation of the coupled cavity structure at each of the natural frequencies. Table 6.1 summarises the calculated coupling coefficients and resonant frequencies.

To illustrate the power of this integrated technique, a diplexer was designed which supported quadruple modes in the centre cavity, two at each frequency of the diplexer. The big advantage of this structure, was the orthogonal nature of the two input modes at the common port feed, which increased the isolation between channels substantially. At the time this was the first diplexer which made use of orthogonal field decoupling. The coupling diagram of the diplexer is shown in Fig. 3.9, with the actual manufactured structure shown in Fig. 3.10. The complexity of the structure is obvious.

The measured results of the diplexer is shown in Fig. 3.11. The excellent isolation in the lower passband is clearly visible, as well as the good pass-band



Designing a quarter wave one excitation, can therefore length for another mode.

Figure 7.3: Basic coupling structure

Figure 3.9: Quad-mode diplexer modes (from [46])

return loss. This waveguide structure ever published, and validated the design procedure very well.

A simulated transmission and reflection response of the diplexer is given in figure 7.4 where channel isolation of more than 70dB can be observed at the channel centre frequencies. The simulated structure presented in figure 7.3 allows 1 channels. The remaining them.

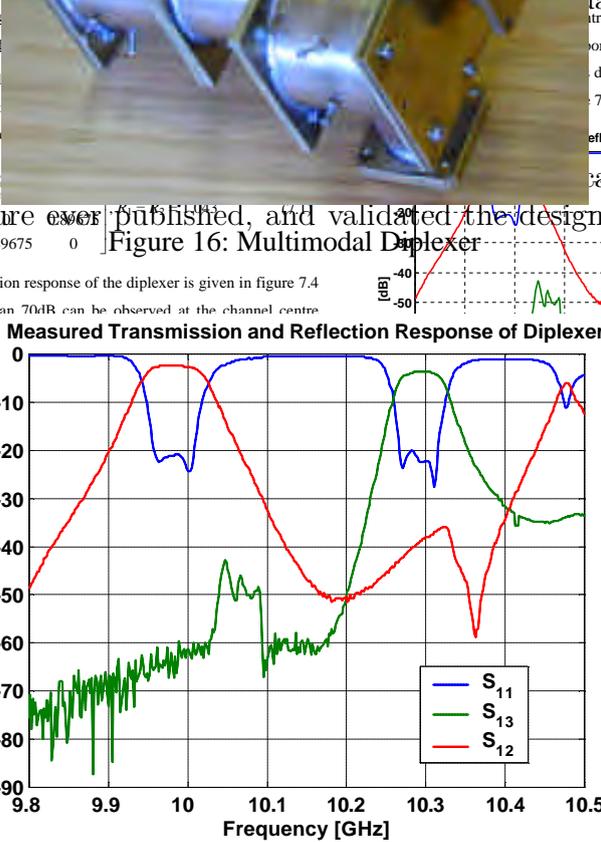


Figure 17: Measured results for Diplexer

IV. MULTIMODE WAVEGUIDE ANTENNA FEED FOR MONOPULSE APPLICATION

A second example of the integrated design technique, was a dual-mode cylindrical waveguide filter, using 90 degree spatially rotated rectangular cavities at both endpoints of a cylindrical resonator, as shown in Fig.3.12 [48]. Up to this point, cross-coupling between the two degenerate modes of a cylindrical waveguide was typically implemented using tuning screws at a 45 degree inclination to the electric field of both modes. This was typically not designed,

In 1961, P.W. Hannan presented design objectives for optimum antenna feed systems for reflector type antennas in monopulse applications. The implementation of these ideas were found to be best achieved with multimode antenna feeds where, typically, a number of waveguide feeds are first combined into one overmoded waveguide, which terminates in the radiating aperture [20,5]. The basic problem is shown in Fig. 18. By exciting the four input waveguides in three different ways, three antenna patterns are obtained, called the plus, elevation and azimuth channels.

One of the problems with these types of feed, is the

of constructed diplexer quad-mode diplexer cavity is denoted as port one with the ports two and three respectively. The device were measured and the results were 7.1.

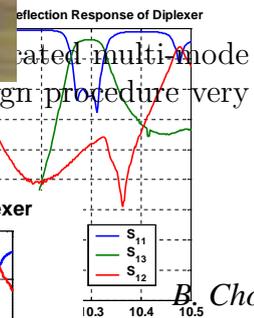
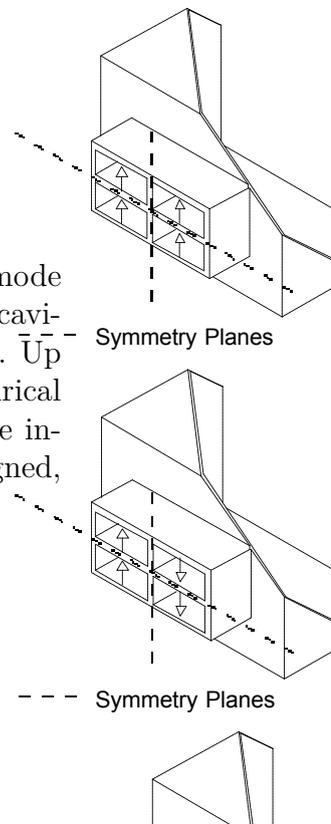


Figure 18: Multimodal Diplexer

B. Choice of functional block

In this type of problem determined by first using symmetry into three different problems and odd mode symmetries as coupled lines. The symmetries are shown in Fig. 19, with conductor and 'h' a perfect



can be when applied to multi-modal waveguide filters. Most of these techniques have since been implemented into commercial software, and are used by designers without even realising. At the time, it served as the only way for us to design a number of these filters for local industry, using fully in-house software.

3.3 Bandstop filters for microwave heating applications

In parallel with the work on bandpass filters which use higher order waveguide modes, my PhD student Dr Chris Vale and myself in 1999 embarked on a project to design bandstop waveguide filters for multiple propagating modes [49]. This worked stemmed from the research activity of colleagues Profs. Johann de Swardt and Howard Reader, on microwave dielectric heating.

The problem at the time was that many microwave heating facilities required conveyor belts passing through a microwave heating cavity, enforcing permanent large openings in the cavity sidewalls, through which dangerous levels of microwave energy can escape if not filtered.

A typical system is shown in Fig. 3.15. The solution to this problem is the placement of bandstop filters (or chokes) on either side of the cavity to reflect and/or absorb any energy before it can do harm to people or equipment outside. These chokes must allow the free movement of product through the facility. The size of the permanent large openings in the cavity sidewalls, through which the object to be heated enters, the aperture size, in general large enough to allow the propagation of multiple waveguide modes. A bandstop filter, able to reflect a number of modes over a specified band was therefore required. This is a difficult problem for which no standard design techniques exist even in the form of a product through the facility.

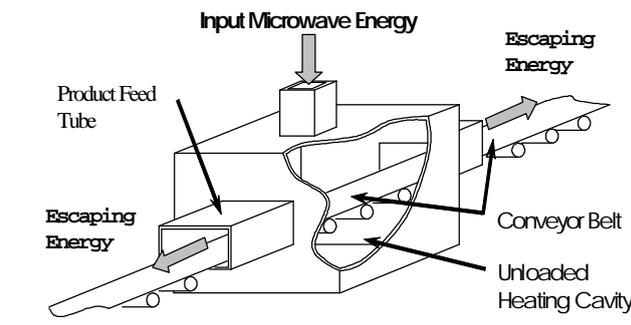


Figure 2: Microwave Heating Cavity with Conveyor Belt Feed
 Figure 3.15: Dielectric heating oven (from [45])

The preferred choke design solution is a reactive choke. This typically reflects the escaping energy back into the cavity using equivalent reactive elements, such as stub lines, in a similar fashion as would be used in a conventional bandstop filter design. Because the conveyor belt channel cannot be blocked in the design problem, however, standard reactive choke designs typically enforce limitations on the aperture geometry, so as to apply single mode equivalent approaches. When such limited aperture geometries conflict with the physical requirements for aperture size set by the size of the product feed tube, the designer must resort to other solutions such as tunnels with absorbing walls, special arrangements of doors timed to open and close to admit product or ‘maze openings’ that force the product to ‘meander through a folder corridor lined with absorbing walls’ [10]. These approaches have many drawbacks, specifically since the use of absorbing materials requires bulky cooling and imposes power limitations, and the

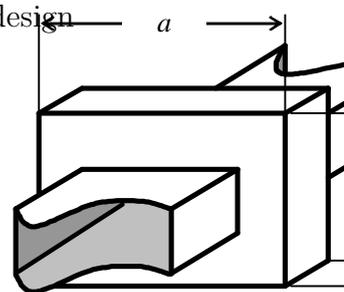


Figure 3: Functional Block

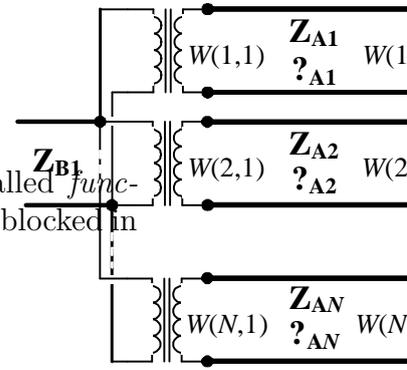


Figure 4: Functional Block Equi

The fundamental field activity in the cavity is not fully understood. In geometries which exhibit multiple modes, energy in the small guide is found to couple between two modes of different propa

-Filters-

5-mode bandstop filter

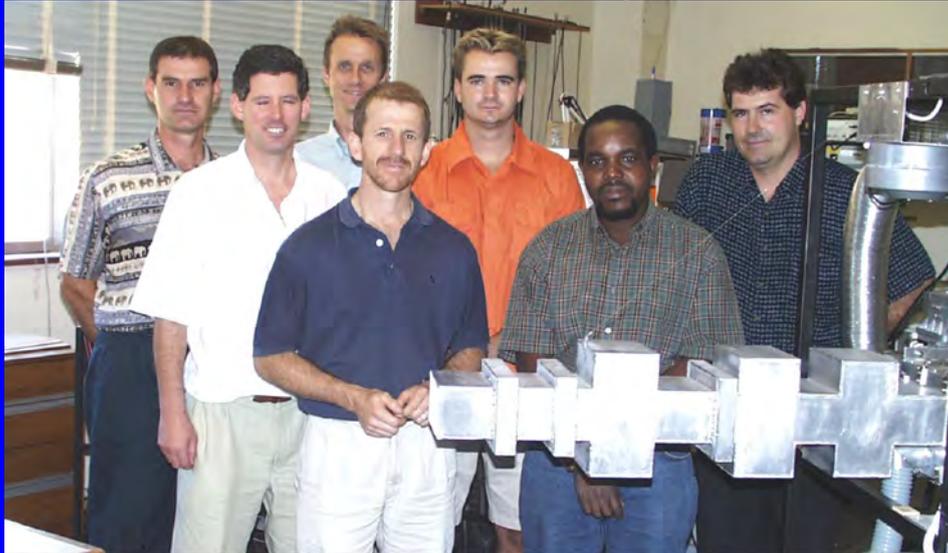


Figure 5.27 Photograph of the choke and its creators.
Figure 3.24: Dielectric heating oven (from [45])

This work, even though it focused on a niche application, represented the first practical solution to the problem of multi-mode waveguide bandstop filters. It also presented the first tested solution for microwave heating applications requiring conveyor belts. The design approach using functional blocks was used in the group for a number of designs, and was the only solution available until the built-in optimisation capabilities of commercial software became so advanced as to render this work of mostly historical significance. The microwave heating system which was developed also served for many years as test bed for materials research.

3.4 Waffle-iron filters

An important part of high-power transmitter systems is the output filtering, which ensures that no signal harmonics are radiated. In waveguide systems, the standard solution for this filtering function has for almost seventy years been the so-called *waffle-iron* filter. In waveguide, due to the existence of higher order modes which have different field distributions and propagation constants at higher frequencies, filters with wide stopbands are difficult to design. Harmonic filters typically require stopbands of up to 1:6, and therefore need to provide an attenuation for up to 10 or 20 higher order modes in the upper stopband. The waffle-iron filter is a periodic structure with a periodicity of much less than a wavelength. From Floquet's work, it is known that such a structure exhibits periodic stopbands (or band-gaps). A classical waffle-iron filter is shown in Fig. 3.25, where the periodic structure is terminated at both ends with stepped transformers which reduce the waveguide height so as to

suppress all modes with variation in the vertical direction.

CHAPTER 3 – NON-UNIFORM AND OBLIQUE WAFFLE-IRON FILTERS

27

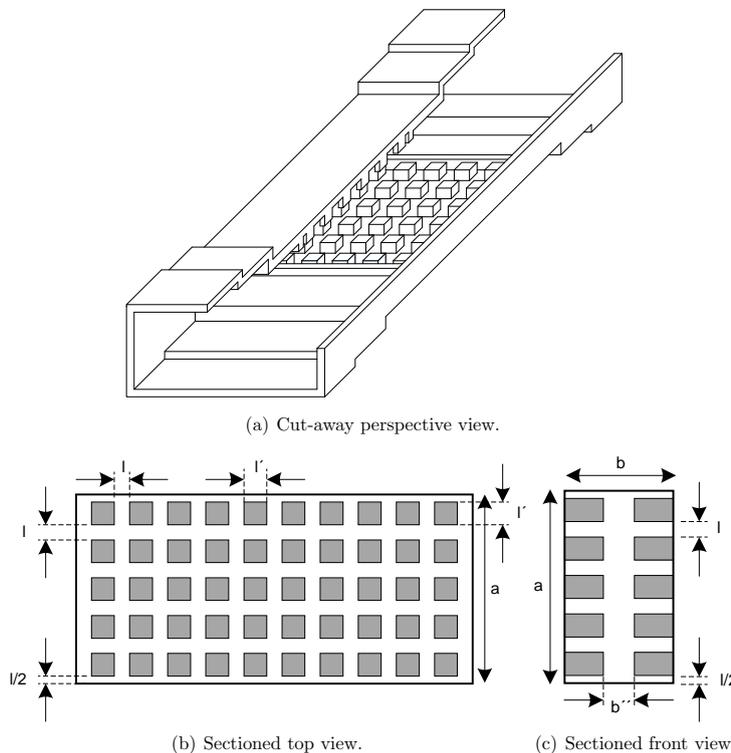


Figure 3.1: ~~Classical~~ **Figure 3.25: Waffle-iron filter** (from [52])

CAD solutions have been developed in recent years [45, 46, 47]. The waffle iron structure is modeled by a series of general scattering problems, or solved utilising hybrid mode

In addition to the wide stopband requirement, waffle iron filters typically have to be able to handle very high power levels as they are often used on Radar transmitters. The design of these filters stretches back to the early 1940's, to a method by Marcuvitz which relies on the basic model of a corrugated waveguide. This method is essentially only concerned with the filter passband, relying on rule-of-thumb dimensions for the lowest stopband cut-off, and the periodicity for the stopband width. No exact synthesis technique has ever been developed for these filters and, even the most recent work simply makes use of very intensive multi-parameter full-wave optimisation.

In 2010, due to a requirement from a local Radar company, my PhD student Dr Tinus Stander and myself started work on improved waffle-iron filter design [52]. In its standard form, the waffle-iron filter has a uniform spacing in both longitudinal and transverse dimensions, as the design approach by Marcuvitz is based on image parameter design, which essentially is the cascade of similar unit cells. Dr Stander proposed a variety of design approaches which allowed for non-uniform patterns, as well as uniform and non-uniform oblique patterns, as shown in Fig. 3.26 and Fig. 3.27. For the non-uniform rectangular and both

oblique cases, the Marcuvitz model was adapted, and a procedure was developed to enable the use of non-identical unit cells. In contrast to the state-of-the-art solutions of the time, which consisted of full-wave circuit-level optimisation, the proposed technique only used circuit-level optimisation, which is several orders of magnitude faster. The proposed technique only used circuit-level optimisation, which is several orders of magnitude faster. stop-band than what is actually realised.

Table 3.13:

Dimensions of four initial waffle-iron designs with $b' \approx 2$ mm and $l_t \approx 2 \times a$.

	Corrugated	Marcuvitz	Non-uniform	Oblique
a	21.58	22.30	22.86	22.31
b	7.96	8.30	7.72	8.72
b_T	4.67	2.42	2.97	2.80
b''	1.79	1.92	2	1.79
l or l_t	2.78	2.10	2.34, 2.34	2.09, 1.95, 1.87, 1.87, 1.95

Figure 3.26: Waffle-iron filter with oblique pattern 1 (from [53])

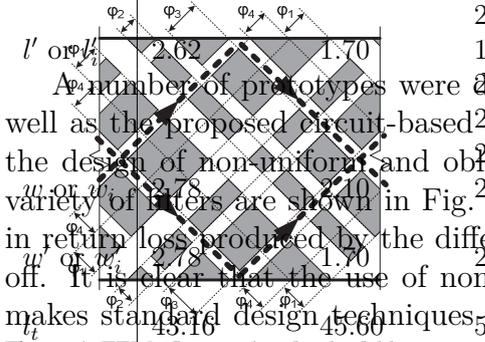
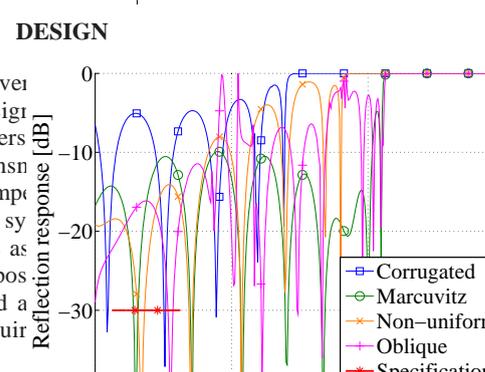
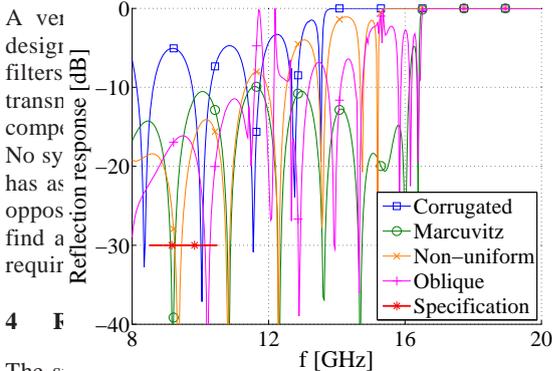


Figure 3.27: Waffle-iron filter with uniform boss pattern with normal angle of incidence.



3 DESIGN



4 FILTER

The simulated results using the circuit model, a full-wave model directly calculated from the circuit model, and a tuned full-wave model for an oblique waffle-iron filter is shown in Fig. 6. Although some fine tuning is necessary for the full-wave model, it is established much faster than a model optimized in a full-wave solver. In addition, the filter can be shown to be more compact than normal waffle-iron filters. Doubling the length of each filter, as is done in the second set, increases the roll-off and the maximum stop-band attenuation. This aspect has to be evaluated with some scrutiny in any design.

data and oblique design) are increased in length by replicating existing dimensions. In the

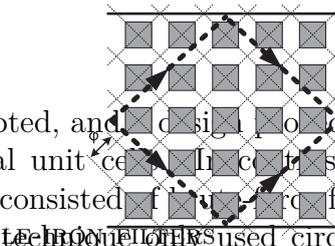


Figure 3.29: TEM phase path perturbation by uniform boss pattern with oblique angle of incidence.

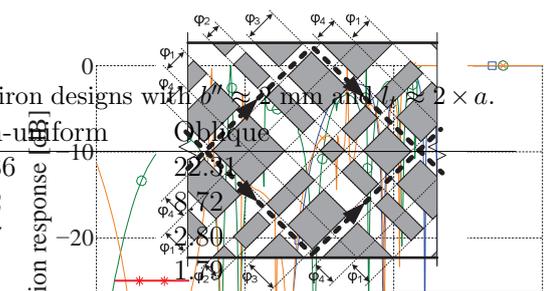


Figure 3.30: TEM phase path perturbation by non-uniform waffle-iron filter.

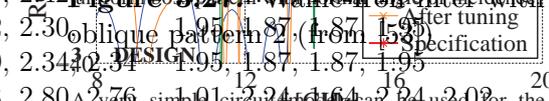


Figure 3.31: Waffle-iron filter tuning. After tuning the circuit model to the specification.

design of these filters. As they are essentially TEM filters, the Marcuvitz model for shorted stub-loaded resonators is the best choice for the initial design. No synthesis method for these non-uniform structures has been proposed. The importance here is that the use of an optimization method for these structures is advantageous, which is not possible with a full-wave solver. Either full-wave optimization or circuit-level optimization is therefore required, with the latter being significantly faster.

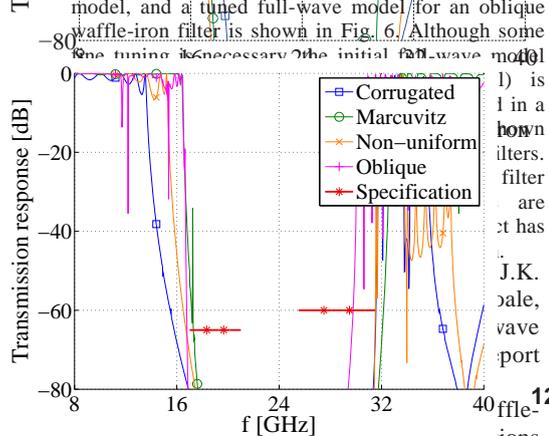


Figure 3.32: Comparison of waffle-iron design approaches. The filter is a half-wavelength filter.

non-linear (convergence), IEEE Transactions on Microwave Theory and Techniques, vol. 11, no. 6, pp. 555 – 557, November 1963.

[3] G. L. Matthaei, L. Young, and E. M. T. Jones, “Direct EM based optimization of advanced waffle-iron and rectangular combline filters,” in IEEE MTT-S International Microwave Symposium, 2002.

[4] F. Arndt and J. Brandt, “Direct EM based optimization of advanced waffle-iron and rectangular combline filters,” in IEEE MTT-S International Microwave Symposium, 2002.

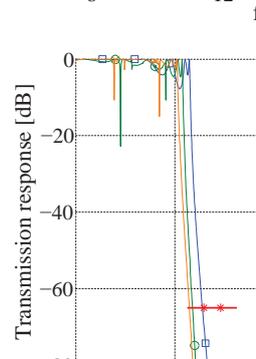
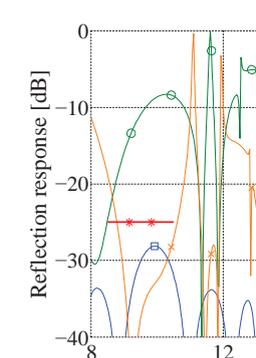


Figure 6: Simulated response of waffle-iron filters.

References

- [1] S.B. Cohn, E. M.T. Shimizu, B.M. Schiess, “Research on design techniques for waffle-iron filters,” Stanford Research Institute Report SRI Project 1331, June 1963.
- [2] L. Young, “Postscript on waffle-iron filters (correspondence),” IEEE Transactions on Microwave Theory and Techniques, no. 6, pp. 555 – 557, November 1963.
- [3] G. L. Matthaei, L. Young, and E. M. T. Jones, “Direct EM based optimization of advanced waffle-iron and rectangular combline filters,” in IEEE MTT-S International Microwave Symposium, 2002.

CHAPTER 3. MICROWAVE FILTERS

Using the proposed technique, a prototype iron filter was designed and tested, with the stopband attenuation shown in Fig. 3.29 and low return loss in the X-band, and good atte

CHAPTER 3. NON-UNIFORM AND ORGONAL WAFFLE-IRON FILTERS

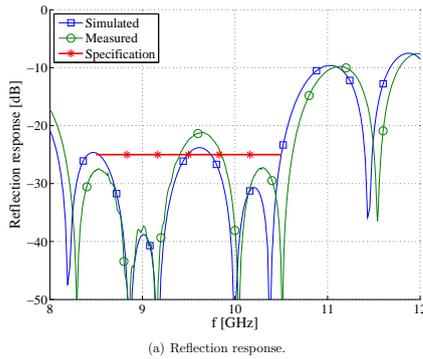


Figure 3.29: Waffle-Iron filter measured results S11 (from [52])

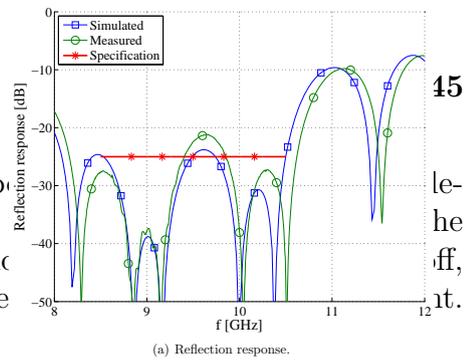
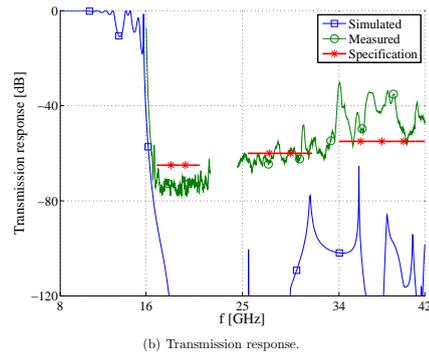


Figure 3.30: Waffle-Iron filter measured results S21 (from [52])



Waffle-iron filters are traditionally all-metal filters, and especially for non-uniform patterns, the manufacturing is quite expensive. Recently, my PhD student Mrs Susan Maas and myself proposed the manufacturing of these filters in the medium of multi-layered circuit boards, using the so-called *Surface Integrated Waveguide (SIW)* structure as basis. Using substrate instead of air reduces the power-handling capability of the filters substantially, but yields significant reductions in size, weight, and cost. Especially the size and weight are of enormous importance in the very fast developing area of cube-sats, i.e. satellites not measuring larger than 10x10x10cm.

Manufacturing waffle-iron filters in this way poses significant challenges, as the inherent uncertainty in the etching and laminating processes of soft substrates is much higher than what can be achieved in high-quality milling. This causes for instance the posts in the filter to all have slightly different dimensions and spacings, as they are implemented using standard PC-board vias. The complexity of the structure mostly manifests in the multi-layer stackup, an example of which is shown in Fig. 3.33.

Two of these filters have been designed and manufactured - a shorter one covering a limited bandwidth shown in Fig. 3.31, and a longer one which includes multiple sections for improved stopband width, shown in Fig. 3.32.

Fig. 3.34 shows a few typical problems that arise in the manufacturing process, such as vias not perfectly aligned, not with the correct depth, and not making contact with the inner conductors. Despite this, the two filters were manufactured and tested, with the measured transmission results shown in Fig. 3.35 and Fig. 3.36. The good stopband performance, and the difference in stopband width between the two filters, are evident.

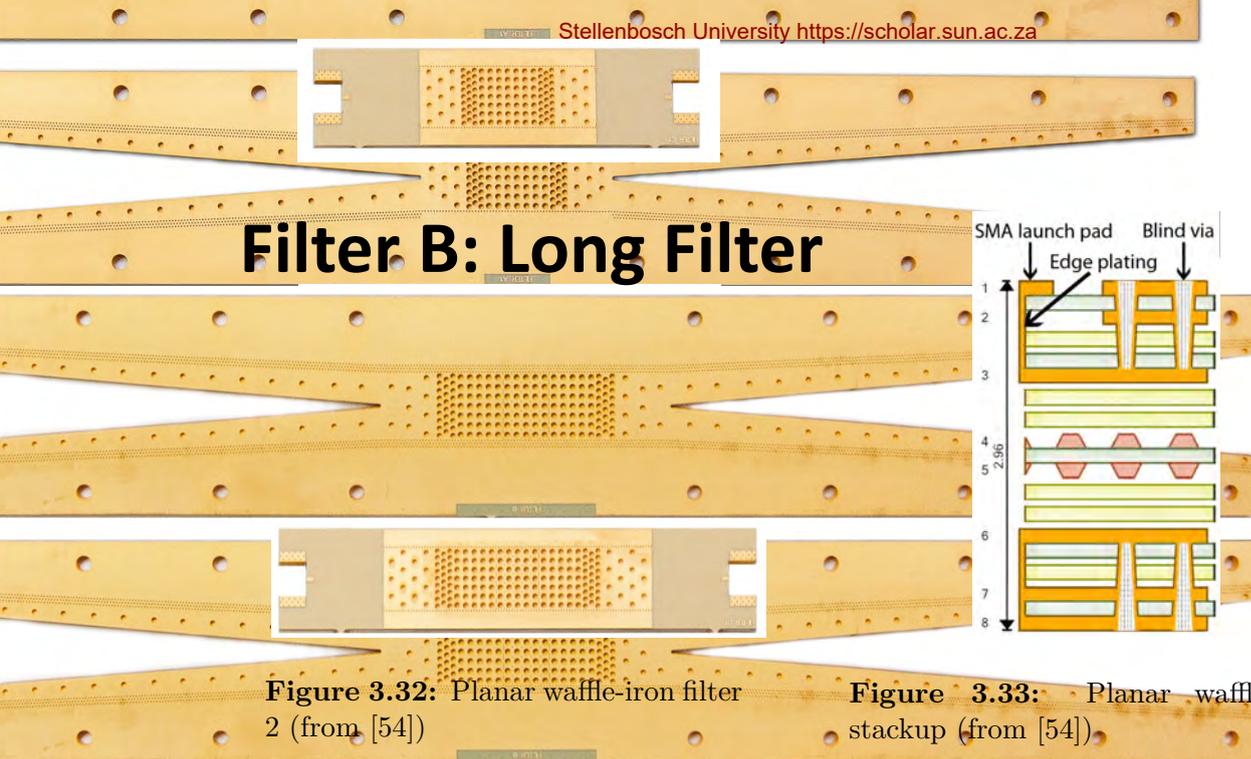


Figure 3.32: Planar waffle-iron filter 2 (from [54])

Figure 3.33: Planar waffle-iron stackup (from [54])

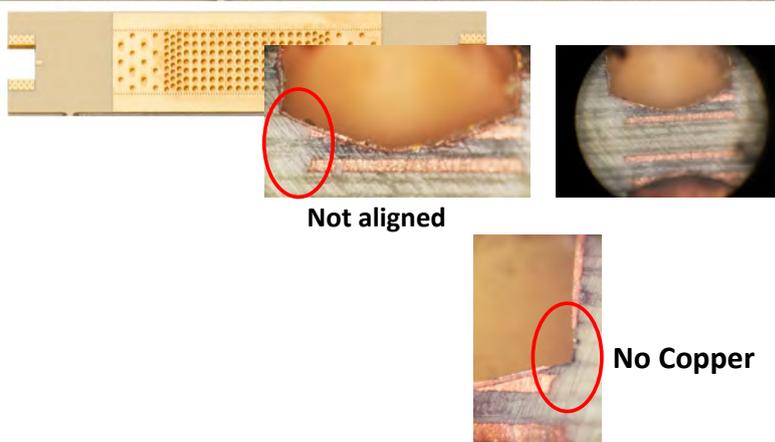


Figure 3.34: Typical planar manufacturing problems(from [54])

At the time of writing, these results are still unpublished and preliminary, but are included to give a complete picture of my work. The possibility to manufacture waffle-iron filters using standard PC-board techniques will be a completely new approach to the manufacturing of these filters, and will allow much more complicate patterns to be implemented. It will also open the door for the application of these very useful filters to small systems in which weight and size are overriding factors.

3.5 Absorbing filters

While by far the most microwave filters perform their filtering action by frequency selective reflection of energy, a small but important group selectively absorb energy in the stopband. The application of these filters is in any sys-

Short Filter #1

Filter A: Short Filter #2

Filter B: Long Filter #2

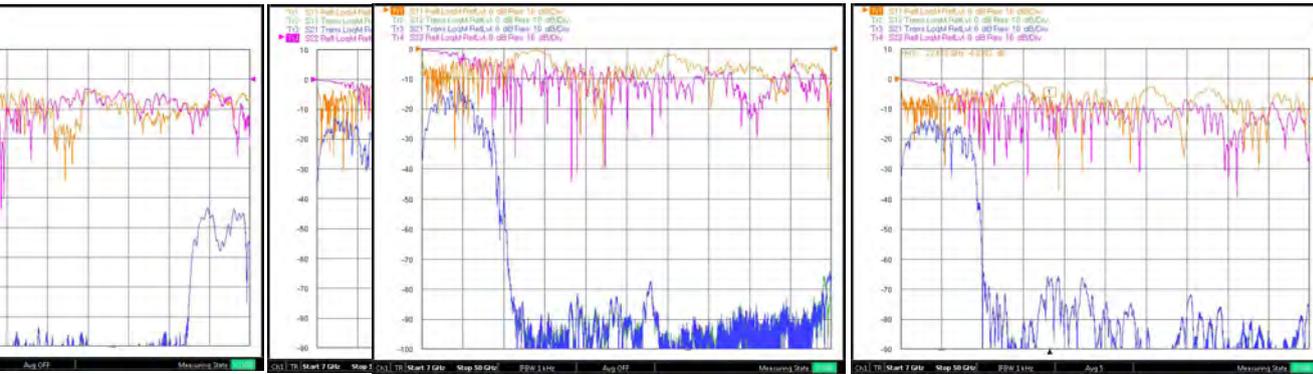


Figure 3.35: Planar waffle-iron filter 1 measurement (from [54])

Figure 3.36: Planar waffle-iron filter 2 measurement (from [54])

tem where reflected energy can become problematic, such as on the output of mixers, or high-power amplifiers. In the first, the reflection of spurious mixing products back into the mixer can lead to increased intermodulation problems, whereas in the latter, the power handling capability of the amplifiers can be exceeded.

For a filter to be absorbing, it has to have significant loss in the stopbands. Classical filter synthesis techniques however rely fundamentally on the network being exactly loss-less, and no design techniques have yet been developed for absorbing filters (note that some techniques, such as pre-distortion, do exist for low-loss filters, but these work on perturbation of the loss-less theory, and are not valid for high-loss filters).

In conjunction with the work on waffle-iron filters, the PhD of Dr Tinus Stander also focused on absorbing filters, especially on combining waffle-iron filters with absorbing structures [52]. A first attempt to implement such a filter was based on design techniques for slotted-waveguide array antennas, with each slot then replaced by an absorbing circuit [55]. The advantages to this are manifold, as slotted waveguide array theory is a mature field of research, with a solid body of design techniques, theory, and application examples.

For the equivalent 'absorbing slot', an etched ring resonator was proposed, as shown in Fig. 3.37. The ring is etched on a thin substrate, interrupted by small surface-mount resistors at two points, and placed transversely in a waveguide at the point where a slot would have been placed in a slotted-waveguide antenna. The length of the ring sets the resonance frequency of the absorber, while the resistors supply the loading.

To illustrate the procedure, a matched load was designed for the X-band, using three etched rings in an X-band waveguide. The measured return loss results are shown in Fig. 3.38, where the three resonant frequencies are clearly visible, as well as the low return loss from 9-12GHz.

While the etched-ring concept is a very useful design approach, the use of surface-mount resistors on a dielectric substrate places a significant limit on the

ABSORBING FILTER BASED ON A WAVEGUIDE ANTENNA

University of Stellenbosch, Private Africa; Corresponding author:

loaded etched rings in waveguide is presented and tested. © 2008 Opt Technol Lett 50: 977-981, 2008; science (www.interscience.wiley.com).

reflected waveguide antenna; circuit model

power-handling capabilities of the filter, as the thermal resistance from the resistor to ambient is very high. To allow for higher power levels, physically larger resistors are required, in some way thermally connected to a heat-dissipating structure. At high frequencies, this leads to higher reactive parasitics, and space problems. For high-power applications, the only solutions are to extract the power in the stopband in some way from the main signal path, and then absorb it. This, the so-called *leaky-wave filter* has been done successfully for decades. While an excellent solution, leaky-wave filters are unfortunately long and bulky.

Dr. Stander proposed a very novel approach to the problem, namely to reflect the energy in the stopband with a wideband reflective filter, such as a waffle-iron filter, and then selectively absorb the reflected signal in absorbers tuned to the harmonic frequencies [56]. This principle is illustrated in Fig. 3.39.

IN WAVEGUIDE

impedance element loaded etched ring. Mias originally proposed a double structure that obtained from a typical structure's reflection coefficient reduced here by a single ring.

loaded resonator is shown in Figure 2. It is applied to split the waveguide. The model has been implemented by replacing the series

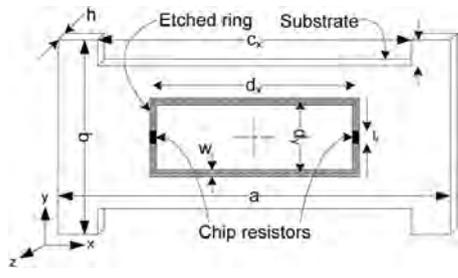


Figure 1 Loaded etched ring resonator with basic dimensions. Not shown in the diagram is the etched ring thickness and the chip resistor value.

Figure 3.37: Etched ring absorber (from [55])

coupling in [5] with shunt coupling, simplifying the model by replacing the mutually coupled inductors with an ideal transformer, adding a shunt capacitor to model the substrate in waveguide [6], and adding resistance to the resonant ring. The shunt admittance of the ring itself (including the transmission lines and shunt capacitor C_s) is expressed as

$$y(\omega) = g(\omega) + jb(\omega)$$

$$= \frac{n^2}{2} \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \frac{\omega_0^2}{\omega_0^2 - \omega^2} \frac{\omega L_j}{1 + j\omega R_j}$$

To calculate element values for the equivalent circuit, the ring structure is simulated in a numerical EM solver. In this case, CST Microwave Studio. Using the simulated values of peak conductance and the susceptance $b(\omega)$ at the center frequency ω_0 , choosing R_j to be the physical resistance in the structure $2r$ (where r is the radius of each of the two physical resistors), values for C_s , and n can easily be derived. Applying this method to the structure shown in Figure 3.37, the results are shown in Figure 3.38.

Dr. Stander proposed a very novel approach to the problem, namely to reflect the energy in the stopband with a wideband reflective filter, such as a waffle-iron filter, and then selectively absorb the reflected signal in absorbers tuned to the harmonic frequencies [56]. This principle is illustrated in Fig. 3.39.

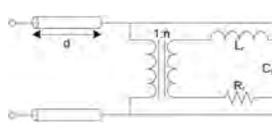


Figure 2 Equivalent circuit model

Figure 3.39: Principle of absorbing filter (from [52])
Solid lines show S_{21} and dotted lines S_{11}

Using the principles of slotted-waveguide antennas, two slots can be placed in the waveguide in front of the plane of the reflective filter, at the point at which the standing wave is the largest.

Implementations for using 0-dB couplers in the signal bandwidth have been published [12], but these limit the filter transmission bandwidth to that achievable by the coupler. The use of leaky wall filters as harmonic pads has been suggested [5], but not developed in the literature to date.

This paper develops a high-power broadband absorptive filter by cascading a novel distributed harmonic pad, consisting of a compact slotted waveguide structure, with a lossless reflective filter with a wide stop-band, both in WR-90 waveguide. A non-uniform waffle-iron filter is used as a reflective filter [1], although any reflective filter can be used in principle. The slotted waveguide structure (similar to a slotted waveguide antenna, but with varying slot

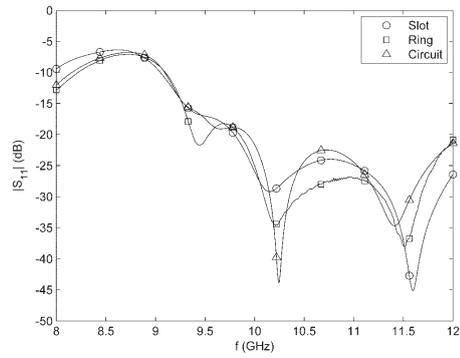


Figure 9 Input reflection of simulated slot array, optimized circuit model, and measured loaded resonator structure.

Figure 3.38: Etched ring filter results (from [55])

to match the value of $\partial b/\partial \omega|_{\omega=\omega_0}$ accurately between the loaded resonator and the circuit, it is necessary to change the value of the SMD resistor in the EM simulation slightly so that $R_j \neq 2r$.

Following this design procedure, the dimensions of loaded resonators 1, 2 and 3 were obtained as indicated in Table 3.3. Columns (b), (c), and (d). Not indicated in the table is the optimized waveguide length between resonators 1 and 2 (l_{12}) of 17.34 mm, and between resonators 2 and 3 (l_{23}) of 26.03 mm.

5. MEASUREMENT RESULTS

The high-power test structure was fabricated on a substrate and 0402 size thin film resistors. The measured reflection responses at high frequencies of the slot array, the only slot array, and ring array responses shown in Figure 9.0.1 reflected match of -15 dB is achieved across the entire X-band.

6. CONCLUSIONS

This article presents a technique to design an accurate matched load to a longitudinally slotted waveguide antenna array by cas-

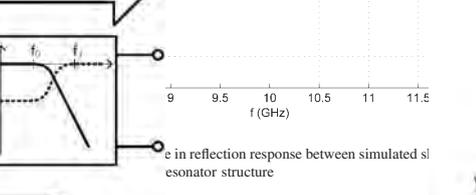
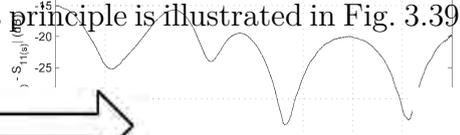


Fig. 2 Transversal broadwall slot pair with absorptive sheet

reduce the overall length of the component as possible. To avoid excitation of modes, the arrangements that preserve Heron's symmetry are preferred.

A topology that satisfies all the above conditions is the transversal broadwall slot [15], which can achieve coupling values of up to -20 dB with a bandwidth of 17% [16]. If a symmetric non-inclined slots is placed as shown in Figure 3.40, the E -plane and H -plane symmetries are preserved. The cut-off frequency of the auxiliary guide can be reduced by increasing the cut-off frequency of the auxiliary guide. This creates a filtering effect which inhibits energy from entering the guide below this frequency. To absorb the energy in the auxiliary guide, the broadwall of this guide is terminated at both ends with matched

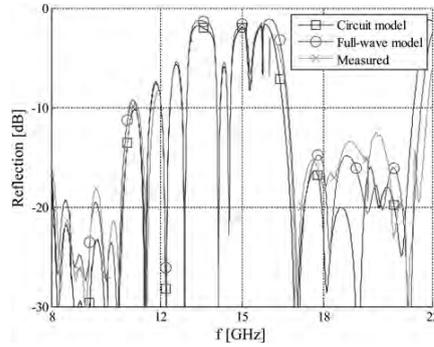


Fig. 10 Measured and simulated reflection response
Figure 3.43: Absorbing filter S11
IET Microw. Antennas Propag., 2014, Vol. 8, Iss. 9, pp. 673–678
 doi:10.1049/iet-map.2013.0431

This work presented a very novel approach for the design of absorbing harmonic filters, and produced a filter significantly smaller than the traditional leaky-wave filters. It was immediately adopted by the industry partner at the time, and has been used in successive systems since. As this is a niche field of research, virtually no other solutions have emerged since this work, and it still represents the state-of-the-art in terms of a compromise between size and performance a decade later.

3.6 Tunable and Planar Filters

Planar filters, constructed using standard PCB fabrication processes, have become increasingly popular over the last few decades as the quality and ability of the processes have developed. Especially the last decade has seen a huge surge in the development of multi-layer microwave circuits, using substrates such as RT-Duroid. At the same time, increases in the capabilities of commercial full-wave electromagnetic analysis software have removed most of the modelling restrictions on structures. Designers can now propose filter structures of almost arbitrary complexity, and solve it very accurately on machines as small as office laptops. This has led to an explosion in filter topologies, resonating structures, coupling structures, and the incorporation of tuning elements into planar structures.

Over the last decade, my own filter work also shifted from mostly waveguide work, to mostly planar work. This was mainly driven by the needs of local industry, who in turn was reacting to a market which changed virtually overnight from almost completely defence orientated to almost completely commercially orientated.

determined by finding the maximum E -field strength E_{max} . From simulation, the maximum E -field occurs at resonance across the slot aperture. At 19 GHz, the simulation indicates $E_{max} = 36996$ V/m RMS for 1 W RMS incident power, which translates to a peak incident power $P_{max} = 1.086$ kW if the value of $E_{max} = 12.1$ kV/cm RMS is chosen to avoid sparking across the aperture of the slot. Away from slot resonance, the slot exhibits maximum power handling capabilities comparable with the waveguide itself, since there is no concentration of E -field in or a

6 Manufacture

The harmonic filter (Fig. 9), using the opposing absorptive elements implemented, make the load compact. The flanges including existing non-measured S -parameters was performed over the transition was completed, followed by a full two-port coaxial calibration at the coaxial-waveguide transitions was completed, followed by a

Fig. 11 Measured and simulated transmission response, wideband

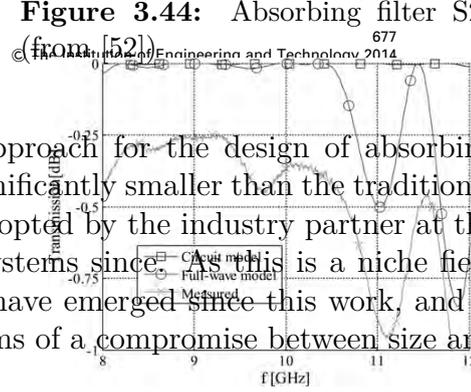
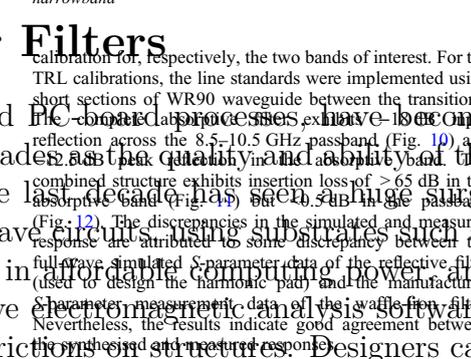


Figure 3.44: Absorbing filter S21
 (from [52])
 © The Institution of Engineering and Technology 2014

Fig. 12 Measured and simulated transmission response, narrowband



calibration for, respectively, the two bands of interest. For the short sections of WR90 waveguide between the transitions, the combined structure exhibits insertion loss of > 65 dB in the absorption band (Fig. 5) and > 60 dB in the passband (Fig. 12). The discrepancies in the simulated and measured response are attributed to some discrepancy between the full-wave simulated S -parameter data of the reflective filter (used to design the harmonic pad) and the manufactured character measurement data of the wave filter. Nevertheless, the results indicate good agreement between the synthesised and measured response.

7 Conclusion

This paper presents an approach for compact harmonic pads using rectangular waveguide coupling guides. Good first-iteration synthesis in a band 17–21 GHz, producing bandwidth to below -12.5 dB.

8 Acknowledgments

The authors wish to thank Reut for financial support of this project. CST Microwave Studio and AWR the use of AWR Microwave Office.

9 References

- 1 Stander, T.: 'High-power broadband dissertation, University of Stellenbosch', <https://scholar.sun.ac.za/handle/10019.1/10019.1>
- 2 Rhodes, J.D.: 'Microwave reflecting resonators having progressively smaller July 14 1998'
- 3 Torgow, E.N.: 'Hybrid junction-coupled', *Microw. Theory Tech.*, 1959, 7, pp. 7-13
- 4 Jachowski, D.R.: 'Passive enhanced notch filters', *IEEE MTT-S Int. MTT-S*, pp. 1315–1318
- 5 Djordjevic, A.R., Zajic, A.G.: 'Low group delay', *IEEE Trans. MTT-S*, pp. 1164–1167
- 6 Conning, S.: 'High-power harmonic', *IEEE MTT-S*, February 17 1970
- 7 Met, V.O.: 'Absorptive filters for', *IRE*, 1959, 47, pp. 1762–1769
- 8 ME Corporation: 'Waveguide harmonic T41C (2005)'
- 9 Minakova, L.B., Rud, L.A.: 'Resonant cascaded lossy waveguide-dielectric', *Technol. Lett.*, 2003, 36, pp. 122–124
- 10 Minakova, L.B., Rud, L.A.: 'Synthesis of narrow-band waveguide', *European Microwave Conf. 2002*, pp. 1-4
- 11 Tantawi, S.G., Vlieks, A.E.: 'Conducting stainless steel', *Proc. 1998*, vol. 4, pp. 2132–2134
- 12 Young, L.: 'Waveguide 0-db and 10-db pads', *Microw. J.*, 1964, 7, pp. 79–81
- 13 Young, L., Schiffman, B.M.: 'Crisp suppression of spurious frequencies', *IEEE Trans. MTT-S*, 1964, vol. 12, pp. 1-4
- 14 Young, L.: 'The design of branch-line couplers', *IEEE Trans. MTT-S*, 1962, vol. 10, pp. 1-4
- 15 Eshrah, I.A., Kishk, A.A.: 'Equivalent circuit model for applications', *Prog. Electromagn. Res.*, 2003, 36, pp. 1-4
- 16 Datta, A., Rajeev, A.M., Chakrabarti, S.: 'Broad band coupler between dissimilar waveguides', *Trans. Circuit Theory*, 1995, 43, pp. 1-4
- 17 Oliner, A.A.: 'The impedance profile of rectangular waveguide', *IEEE Trans. MTT-S*, 1957, 5, pp. 4–11
- 18 du Toit, L.J.: 'Advances in the design of waveguide filters', *IEEE APS Int. Symp.*, 1990, vol. 1, pp. 1-4

3.6.1 Triple-mode filters

One of the areas in filter design which received significant international attention, was that of multi-frequency resonators. As a general goal, the emphasis on planar resonators has been on miniaturisation, and the possibility to achieve multiple resonances using a resonator with roughly the same footprint as a singly resonant circuit, was very attractive.

In cooperation with Prof Branka Jokanovic from Belgrade, and with a colleague Dr Riana Geschke, our first efforts in this direction was a triple-mode etched split-ring resonator [57] and [58]. This consisted of three very tightly coupled, concentric, split-ring resonators such as shown in Fig. 3.45. Having the three resonators so tightly coupled, reduces the total footprint by a huge margin, but makes the design quite complicated, as is quite clear from the complicated circuit model shown in Fig. 3.46. This especially becomes a problem when the resonator is to be used in a larger filter structure.

GESCHKE *et al.*: FILTER PARAMETER EXTRACTION FOR TRIPLE-BAND COMPOSITE SRRs AND FILTERS

1501

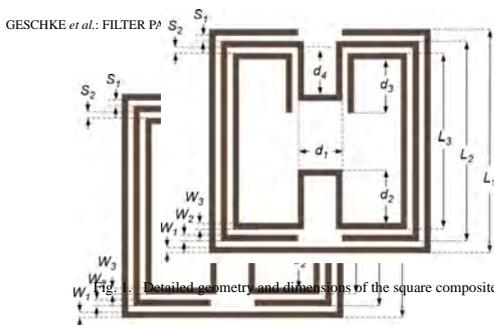


Fig. 1. Detailed geometry and dimensions of the square composite resonator.

Figure 3.45: Triple band resonator (from [57])

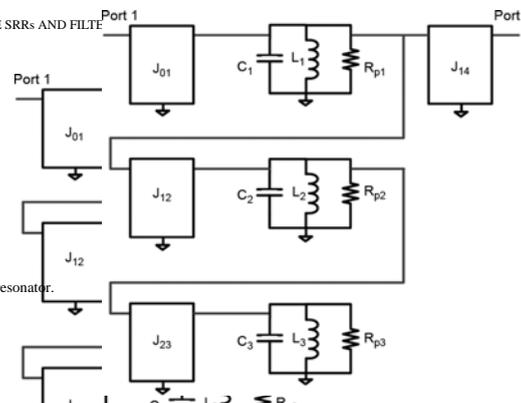


Fig. 4. Circuit representation of the coupling model for the resonator with coupling topology of Fig. 3.45.

Figure 3.46: Triple band resonator



Fig. 2. Basic composite resonator composed of three resonators and feeds for coupling topology of Fig. 3.45.

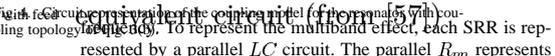


Fig. 3. Two coupling models for the composite resonator. (a) A complete model, which includes cross-coupling and coupling between feed and each resonator and (b) Frequency independent coupling model for determining the self-resonant frequencies. The two filter resonators have U-shaped resonators described by parameters d_1 to d_4 . These parameters adjust the from the side resonant frequency f_0 , each resonator side can be used to

Fig. 3. Two coupling models for the composite resonator. (a) A complete model, which includes cross-coupling and coupling between feed and each resonator and (b) Frequency independent coupling model for determining the self-resonant frequencies. The two filter resonators have U-shaped resonators described by parameters d_1 to d_4 . These parameters adjust the from the side resonant frequency f_0 , each resonator side can be used to

To enable a design process, we propose the use of a design process, which parts of the resonator could be shown in Fig. 3.45, leaving the structure to exhibit only the normal two resonances expected from a coupled resonator system. From these two frequencies, the resonator frequencies can be extracted as well as the coupling inverter. The coupling inverter is represented by inductors J_{01} and J_{14} , and the three resonator frequencies are represented by the parallel LC resonators. The coupling parameters are inter-dependent, and the coupling inverter is represented by inductors J_{12} and J_{23} . The coupling inverter is represented by inductors J_{01} and J_{14} , and the three resonator frequencies are represented by the parallel LC resonators. The coupling parameters are inter-dependent, and the coupling inverter is represented by inductors J_{12} and J_{23} .

B. Circuit Model for a Single Composite Resonator

A coupling model for the composite resonator can be developed by coupling the outside resonator to input and output feeds, as shown in Fig. 2, and using the S-parameters over the whole bandwidth. Resonators 2 and 3 are rejection resonators that position Two coupling models for the composite resonator are presented in Fig. 3. Resonator 1 is the only resonator that is not a multiple opening transmission line. The resonators may be modeled by a single LC resonator. The model of the composite resonator is presented in Fig. 4. While a tightly coupled combination of two (or multiple) opening half-wavelength resonators may be modeled by a single LC resonant tank circuit [13], [14], it only predicts a single resonant

$$J_{mn} = k_{mn} \sqrt{\frac{b_n}{b_m}} \quad b_n = \frac{1}{2} \left(C_n + \frac{1}{\omega_{0n} L_n} \right) \quad (2)$$

$$C_n = \frac{1}{\omega_{0n} L_n} \quad (3)$$

Two resonator examples are given to illustrate an optimization-based parameter-extraction method and the applicability of the lumped-element model of Fig. 4 to predict the filter responses. Resonator 1 is designed on a Rogers 5870 substrate

CHAPTE

Fig. 12. (a) 3-D structure of the proposed filter and (b) simulated response.

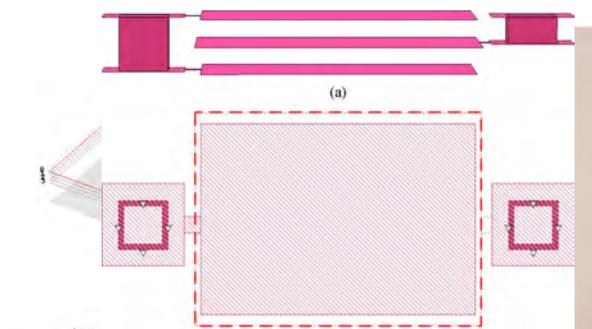


Figure 3.57 Mixed coupling filter layout (from [60]) (a) Modified three-layer capacitor and (b) its planar structure (dashed lines are for the middle layer).

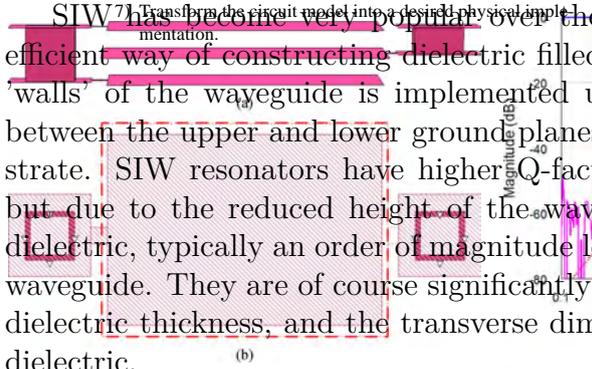


Fig. 13. (a) Modified three-layer capacitor and (b) its planar structure (dashed lines are for the middle layer).

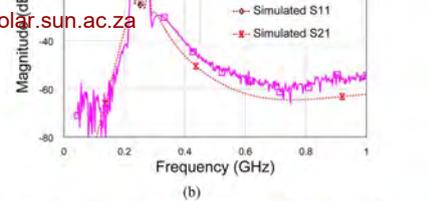


Fig. 14. (a) Photograph of the fabricated filter with two transmission zeros. (b) Its measured wideband response and (c) narrowband response.

As with a normal waveguide, SIW suffers from the problem of spurious resonances due to the propagation of higher order modes. In standard waveguide, this problem is solved by the use of ridged waveguide, which increases the spacing between the cut-off frequencies of the first two modes by a factor of up to five or six. The pedestal resonator proposed in [62] can be viewed as a doubly folded ridge waveguide resonator as implemented in SIW and retains to an extent the good modal separation of ridged waveguide implementation.

As in all waveguide, higher loading incurs smaller size and lower Q-values, but in the pedestal resonator, this compromise between Q-value, size and spurious resonance separation, can be chosen by the designer.

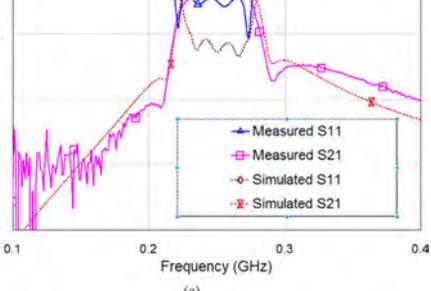


Figure 3.57 Mixed coupling filter measurements (from [60])

IV. FABRICATION AND MEASUREMENT

The above filter example is fabricated using the multilayer LCP fabrication process from [12]. From Fig. 11(b), it can be seen that the differences between the values before and after optimization are very small. This also suggests that the fabrication errors should be well controlled to ensure the fabricated samples have the designed performances. For this reason, all the multilayer capacitors appeared in the design are implemented in a way as shown in Fig. 13. For a three-layer capacitor, the middle layer patch is designed to be slightly larger than the first and

The pedestal resonator is constructed by a patch situated between the two ground planes of an SIW resonator, connected to the one ground plane through a via, or a set of vias. Two basic shapes are shown in Fig. 3.58.

The main characteristics of the pedestal resonator are shown in Fig. 3.59(a), which shows the resonance frequency of the second resonance as a function of the first resonance, for a set of typical resonators, and Fig. 3.59(b), which

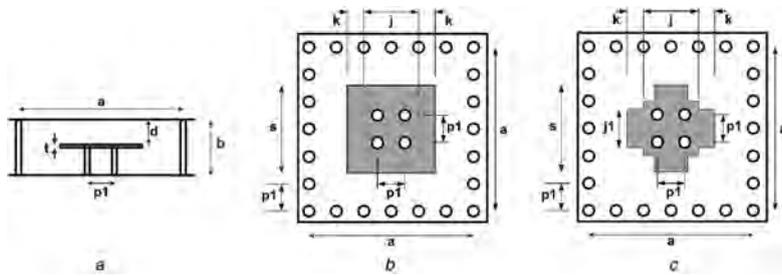


Fig. 3 Side view and top view of SIW pedestal resonator

Q6 (a) Side view of rectangular SIW pedestal resonator. (b) Top view of rectangular SIW pedestal resonator. (c) Top view of cross-shaped SIW pedestal resonator

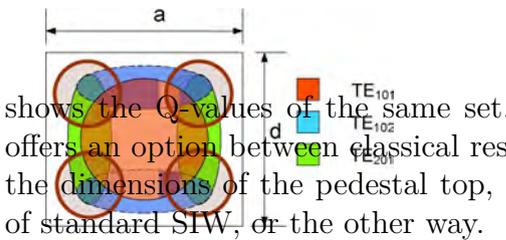
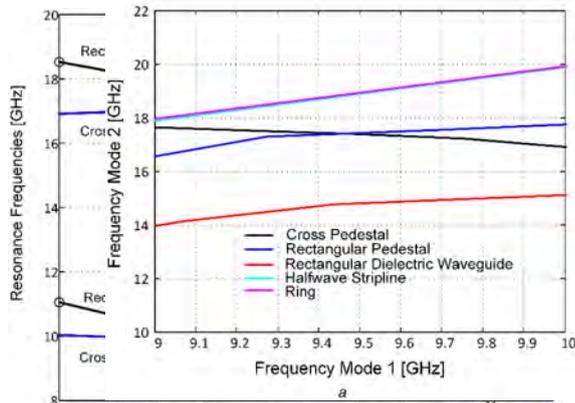


Fig. 4 Areas of high electric field intensity for the first three resonant modes of a square pedestal resonator



Q7 Fig. 6 Two frequencies of mode 1 and mode 2 are plotted against each other

Fig. 5 Resonant frequencies of modes 1 and 2 versus k roughness is included. Fig. 6b shows the results of the set of analyses.

approach. It does not offer much insight into the advantages of the structure and the design is the optimisation only. In comparison, the development of a pedestal resonator guides structure allows for a much more direct relationship with the resonant frequencies of the different modes, but at the expense of the analytical SIW models. It is clear that the difference between the line-based resonators and the waveguide-based resonators is that the waveguide-based resonators are proposed in [90]. Small structures have been used quite extensively because of the former are more affected by conductor loss.

Two additional improvements to the structure (to separate adjacent resonant modes) are possible. Fig. 4 shows a top view of a square resonator, with the areas of high electric field intensity for the first three resonant modes calculated onto a circular SIW. It is depicted using different colours. It is clear that the two higher order modes have the strongest field components on axis, and that the cross-shaped pedestal resonator to implement a filter with a centre frequency of 9.1 GHz and a fractional 3 dB bandwidth of 4%. A standard inline coupled-resonator design is obtained from tables for a 0.01 dB ripple Chebyshev prototype, and the bandwidth scaled to yield the following k - and q -values $q_1 = 0.29$, $q_2 = 0.29$, and $k = 0.0217$. The inline configuration is implemented in a square layout of four resonators with no cross-couplings. The second filter, filter B, uses almost the same outer dimensions, but increased resonator loading through the use of the square pedestal, to implement a filter with a centre frequency of 7 GHz and a 20 dB equi-ripple return loss bandwidth of 200 MHz (or 2.9%). This filter also utilises a square layout of resonators, but with one negative cross-coupling between resonators 1 and 4, for increased stopband roll-off. Again following classical coupled-resonator design for this filter, but allowing for one negative cross-coupling, and with an additional specification of a high-end attenuation of better than 48

Additional improvements to the structure (to separate adjacent resonant modes) are possible. Fig. 4 shows a top view of a square resonator, with the areas of high electric field intensity for the first three resonant modes calculated onto a circular SIW. It is depicted using different colours. It is clear that the two higher order modes have the strongest field components on axis, and that the cross-shaped pedestal resonator to implement a filter with a centre frequency of 9.1 GHz and a fractional 3 dB bandwidth of 4%. A standard inline coupled-resonator design is obtained from tables for a 0.01 dB ripple Chebyshev prototype, and the bandwidth scaled to yield the following k - and q -values $q_1 = 0.29$, $q_2 = 0.29$, and $k = 0.0217$. The inline configuration is implemented in a square layout of four resonators with no cross-couplings. The second filter, filter B, uses almost the same outer dimensions, but increased resonator loading through the use of the square pedestal, to implement a filter with a centre frequency of 7 GHz and a 20 dB equi-ripple return loss bandwidth of 200 MHz (or 2.9%). This filter also utilises a square layout of resonators, but with one negative cross-coupling between resonators 1 and 4, for increased stopband roll-off. Again following classical coupled-resonator design for this filter, but allowing for one negative cross-coupling, and with an additional specification of a high-end attenuation of better than 48

Additional improvements to the structure (to separate adjacent resonant modes) are possible. Fig. 4 shows a top view of a square resonator, with the areas of high electric field intensity for the first three resonant modes calculated onto a circular SIW. It is depicted using different colours. It is clear that the two higher order modes have the strongest field components on axis, and that the cross-shaped pedestal resonator to implement a filter with a centre frequency of 9.1 GHz and a fractional 3 dB bandwidth of 4%. A standard inline coupled-resonator design is obtained from tables for a 0.01 dB ripple Chebyshev prototype, and the bandwidth scaled to yield the following k - and q -values $q_1 = 0.29$, $q_2 = 0.29$, and $k = 0.0217$. The inline configuration is implemented in a square layout of four resonators with no cross-couplings. The second filter, filter B, uses almost the same outer dimensions, but increased resonator loading through the use of the square pedestal, to implement a filter with a centre frequency of 7 GHz and a 20 dB equi-ripple return loss bandwidth of 200 MHz (or 2.9%). This filter also utilises a square layout of resonators, but with one negative cross-coupling between resonators 1 and 4, for increased stopband roll-off. Again following classical coupled-resonator design for this filter, but allowing for one negative cross-coupling, and with an additional specification of a high-end attenuation of better than 48

Additional improvements to the structure (to separate adjacent resonant modes) are possible. Fig. 4 shows a top view of a square resonator, with the areas of high electric field intensity for the first three resonant modes calculated onto a circular SIW. It is depicted using different colours. It is clear that the two higher order modes have the strongest field components on axis, and that the cross-shaped pedestal resonator to implement a filter with a centre frequency of 9.1 GHz and a fractional 3 dB bandwidth of 4%. A standard inline coupled-resonator design is obtained from tables for a 0.01 dB ripple Chebyshev prototype, and the bandwidth scaled to yield the following k - and q -values $q_1 = 0.29$, $q_2 = 0.29$, and $k = 0.0217$. The inline configuration is implemented in a square layout of four resonators with no cross-couplings. The second filter, filter B, uses almost the same outer dimensions, but increased resonator loading through the use of the square pedestal, to implement a filter with a centre frequency of 7 GHz and a 20 dB equi-ripple return loss bandwidth of 200 MHz (or 2.9%). This filter also utilises a square layout of resonators, but with one negative cross-coupling between resonators 1 and 4, for increased stopband roll-off. Again following classical coupled-resonator design for this filter, but allowing for one negative cross-coupling, and with an additional specification of a high-end attenuation of better than 48

Additional improvements to the structure (to separate adjacent resonant modes) are possible. Fig. 4 shows a top view of a square resonator, with the areas of high electric field intensity for the first three resonant modes calculated onto a circular SIW. It is depicted using different colours. It is clear that the two higher order modes have the strongest field components on axis, and that the cross-shaped pedestal resonator to implement a filter with a centre frequency of 9.1 GHz and a fractional 3 dB bandwidth of 4%. A standard inline coupled-resonator design is obtained from tables for a 0.01 dB ripple Chebyshev prototype, and the bandwidth scaled to yield the following k - and q -values $q_1 = 0.29$, $q_2 = 0.29$, and $k = 0.0217$. The inline configuration is implemented in a square layout of four resonators with no cross-couplings. The second filter, filter B, uses almost the same outer dimensions, but increased resonator loading through the use of the square pedestal, to implement a filter with a centre frequency of 7 GHz and a 20 dB equi-ripple return loss bandwidth of 200 MHz (or 2.9%). This filter also utilises a square layout of resonators, but with one negative cross-coupling between resonators 1 and 4, for increased stopband roll-off. Again following classical coupled-resonator design for this filter, but allowing for one negative cross-coupling, and with an additional specification of a high-end attenuation of better than 48

Additional improvements to the structure (to separate adjacent resonant modes) are possible. Fig. 4 shows a top view of a square resonator, with the areas of high electric field intensity for the first three resonant modes calculated onto a circular SIW. It is depicted using different colours. It is clear that the two higher order modes have the strongest field components on axis, and that the cross-shaped pedestal resonator to implement a filter with a centre frequency of 9.1 GHz and a fractional 3 dB bandwidth of 4%. A standard inline coupled-resonator design is obtained from tables for a 0.01 dB ripple Chebyshev prototype, and the bandwidth scaled to yield the following k - and q -values $q_1 = 0.29$, $q_2 = 0.29$, and $k = 0.0217$. The inline configuration is implemented in a square layout of four resonators with no cross-couplings. The second filter, filter B, uses almost the same outer dimensions, but increased resonator loading through the use of the square pedestal, to implement a filter with a centre frequency of 7 GHz and a 20 dB equi-ripple return loss bandwidth of 200 MHz (or 2.9%). This filter also utilises a square layout of resonators, but with one negative cross-coupling between resonators 1 and 4, for increased stopband roll-off. Again following classical coupled-resonator design for this filter, but allowing for one negative cross-coupling, and with an additional specification of a high-end attenuation of better than 48

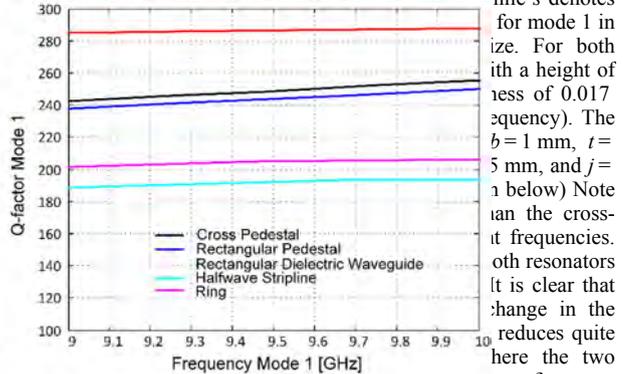
Additional improvements to the structure (to separate adjacent resonant modes) are possible. Fig. 4 shows a top view of a square resonator, with the areas of high electric field intensity for the first three resonant modes calculated onto a circular SIW. It is depicted using different colours. It is clear that the two higher order modes have the strongest field components on axis, and that the cross-shaped pedestal resonator to implement a filter with a centre frequency of 9.1 GHz and a fractional 3 dB bandwidth of 4%. A standard inline coupled-resonator design is obtained from tables for a 0.01 dB ripple Chebyshev prototype, and the bandwidth scaled to yield the following k - and q -values $q_1 = 0.29$, $q_2 = 0.29$, and $k = 0.0217$. The inline configuration is implemented in a square layout of four resonators with no cross-couplings. The second filter, filter B, uses almost the same outer dimensions, but increased resonator loading through the use of the square pedestal, to implement a filter with a centre frequency of 7 GHz and a 20 dB equi-ripple return loss bandwidth of 200 MHz (or 2.9%). This filter also utilises a square layout of resonators, but with one negative cross-coupling between resonators 1 and 4, for increased stopband roll-off. Again following classical coupled-resonator design for this filter, but allowing for one negative cross-coupling, and with an additional specification of a high-end attenuation of better than 48

Additional improvements to the structure (to separate adjacent resonant modes) are possible. Fig. 4 shows a top view of a square resonator, with the areas of high electric field intensity for the first three resonant modes calculated onto a circular SIW. It is depicted using different colours. It is clear that the two higher order modes have the strongest field components on axis, and that the cross-shaped pedestal resonator to implement a filter with a centre frequency of 9.1 GHz and a fractional 3 dB bandwidth of 4%. A standard inline coupled-resonator design is obtained from tables for a 0.01 dB ripple Chebyshev prototype, and the bandwidth scaled to yield the following k - and q -values $q_1 = 0.29$, $q_2 = 0.29$, and $k = 0.0217$. The inline configuration is implemented in a square layout of four resonators with no cross-couplings. The second filter, filter B, uses almost the same outer dimensions, but increased resonator loading through the use of the square pedestal, to implement a filter with a centre frequency of 7 GHz and a 20 dB equi-ripple return loss bandwidth of 200 MHz (or 2.9%). This filter also utilises a square layout of resonators, but with one negative cross-coupling between resonators 1 and 4, for increased stopband roll-off. Again following classical coupled-resonator design for this filter, but allowing for one negative cross-coupling, and with an additional specification of a high-end attenuation of better than 48

Additional improvements to the structure (to separate adjacent resonant modes) are possible. Fig. 4 shows a top view of a square resonator, with the areas of high electric field intensity for the first three resonant modes calculated onto a circular SIW. It is depicted using different colours. It is clear that the two higher order modes have the strongest field components on axis, and that the cross-shaped pedestal resonator to implement a filter with a centre frequency of 9.1 GHz and a fractional 3 dB bandwidth of 4%. A standard inline coupled-resonator design is obtained from tables for a 0.01 dB ripple Chebyshev prototype, and the bandwidth scaled to yield the following k - and q -values $q_1 = 0.29$, $q_2 = 0.29$, and $k = 0.0217$. The inline configuration is implemented in a square layout of four resonators with no cross-couplings. The second filter, filter B, uses almost the same outer dimensions, but increased resonator loading through the use of the square pedestal, to implement a filter with a centre frequency of 7 GHz and a 20 dB equi-ripple return loss bandwidth of 200 MHz (or 2.9%). This filter also utilises a square layout of resonators, but with one negative cross-coupling between resonators 1 and 4, for increased stopband roll-off. Again following classical coupled-resonator design for this filter, but allowing for one negative cross-coupling, and with an additional specification of a high-end attenuation of better than 48

changing the structure in those areas will affect all the modes in the same way, i.e. reduce the total stored electric field and therefore the resonance frequency. If however the corner sections are removed, the fundamental mode will suffer a bigger disturbance than the higher-order modes, increasing the Q -factor and frequency separation. The resulting shape is a cross-shaped pedestal, the SIW implementation of which is shown in Fig. 3c.

Following, can be moved towards the resonator is compared in terms of the resonant frequencies and the unloaded quality factors attainable by each cavity, using the eigenmode solver of CST Microwave Studio. Note that in both cases, the structure is allowed to become rectangular. The parameter k influences the length of the top of each resonator while s denotes



into perspective, the ratios of the first two resonant frequencies for a number of standard resonators are also shown in the figure, resonator characteristics for a halfwave stripline resonator, a ring resonator and a rectangular dielectric filled waveguide, (equivalent to standard SIW guide), all realised on the same substrate.

As expected, the standard dielectric filled waveguide shows the most flexible response, it permits the accurate modelling of the mode, while the ratio of the two waveguide resonant frequencies show a ratio spaced evenly over the two quarter pedestal resonant frequencies. Between these two resonant frequencies, the Q -factor peaks, with a peak at 1:2 ratio. The Q -factor of the ring resonator is also shown in the figure, and it is clear that the Q -factor of the ring resonator is more than double that of the pedestal resonator.

The two filters were chosen to illustrate the flexibility offered by the standard SIW guide, it permits the accurate modelling of the mode, while the ratio of the two waveguide resonant frequencies show a ratio spaced evenly over the two quarter pedestal resonant frequencies. Between these two resonant frequencies, the Q -factor peaks, with a peak at 1:2 ratio. The Q -factor of the ring resonator is also shown in the figure, and it is clear that the Q -factor of the ring resonator is more than double that of the pedestal resonator.

As expected, the standard dielectric filled waveguide shows the most flexible response, it permits the accurate modelling of the mode, while the ratio of the two waveguide resonant frequencies show a ratio spaced evenly over the two quarter pedestal resonant frequencies. Between these two resonant frequencies, the Q -factor peaks, with a peak at 1:2 ratio. The Q -factor of the ring resonator is also shown in the figure, and it is clear that the Q -factor of the ring resonator is more than double that of the pedestal resonator.

As expected, the standard dielectric filled waveguide shows the most flexible response, it permits the accurate modelling of the mode, while the ratio of the two waveguide resonant frequencies show a ratio spaced evenly over the two quarter pedestal resonant frequencies. Between these two resonant frequencies, the Q -factor peaks, with a peak at 1:2 ratio. The Q -factor of the ring resonator is also shown in the figure, and it is clear that the Q -factor of the ring resonator is more than double that of the pedestal resonator.

As expected, the standard dielectric filled waveguide shows the most flexible response, it permits the accurate modelling of the mode, while the ratio of the two waveguide resonant frequencies show a ratio spaced evenly over the two quarter pedestal resonant frequencies. Between these two resonant frequencies, the Q -factor peaks, with a peak at 1:2 ratio. The Q -factor of the ring resonator is also shown in the figure, and it is clear that the Q -factor of the ring resonator is more than double that of the pedestal resonator.

As expected, the standard dielectric filled waveguide shows the most flexible response, it permits the accurate modelling of the mode, while the ratio of the two waveguide resonant frequencies show a ratio spaced evenly over the two quarter pedestal resonant frequencies. Between these two resonant frequencies, the Q -factor peaks, with a peak at 1:2 ratio. The Q -factor of the ring resonator is also shown in the figure, and it is clear that the Q -factor of the ring resonator is more than double that of the pedestal resonator.

As expected, the standard dielectric filled waveguide shows the most flexible response, it permits the accurate modelling of the mode, while the ratio of the two waveguide resonant frequencies show a ratio spaced evenly over the two quarter pedestal resonant frequencies. Between these two resonant frequencies, the Q -factor peaks, with a peak at 1:2 ratio. The Q -factor of the ring resonator is also shown in the figure, and it is clear that the Q -factor of the ring resonator is more than double that of the pedestal resonator.

As expected, the standard dielectric filled waveguide shows the most flexible response, it permits the accurate modelling of the mode, while the ratio of the two waveguide resonant frequencies show a ratio spaced evenly over the two quarter pedestal resonant frequencies. Between these two resonant frequencies, the Q -factor peaks, with a peak at 1:2 ratio. The Q -factor of the ring resonator is also shown in the figure, and it is clear that the Q -factor of the ring resonator is more than double that of the pedestal resonator.

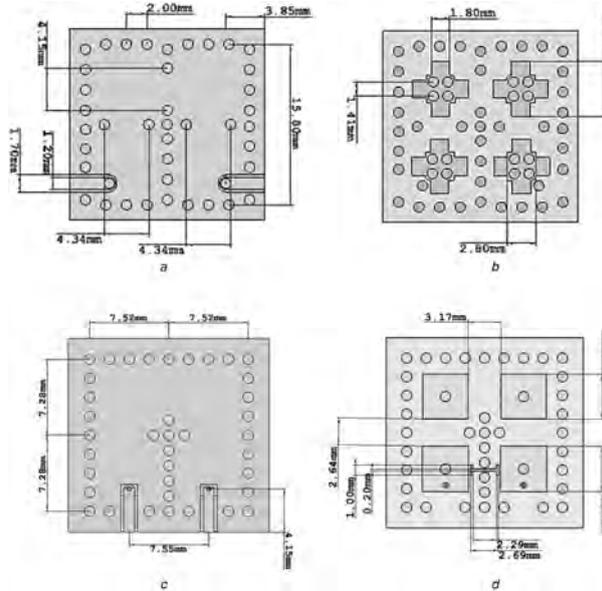


Fig. 7 Two-layer implementation of the final structure of filter A (a) Filter A top layer, (b) Filter A internal layer, (c) Filter B top layer, (d) Filter B internal layer

Figure 3.60: Pedestal resonator filters (from [62])

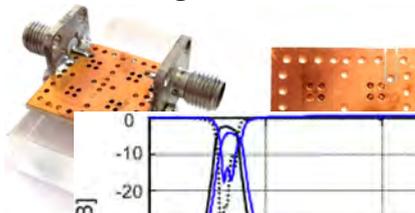


Fig. 8 Filter (a) Perspective view

coupling, and the two resonators are coupled to each other using magnetic coupling. The input and output couplings are also magnetic, by means of a post-transitioning from a co-planar feed line on the top surface to a pedestal resonator at the bottom surface.

The two-layer implementation of the filter is shown in Figs. 7(a) and 7(b). The resonators are coupled to each other using magnetic coupling. The input and output couplings are also magnetic, by means of a post-transitioning from a co-planar feed line on the top surface to a pedestal resonator at the bottom surface.

The total outside diameter of the pedestal resonator is 3.65 mm, including the pedestal. The pedestal resonator is 1.94 mm high.

Filter A was designed for a centre frequency of 9.4 GHz. An Agilent PNA was used for the measurements. The filter was measured in a waveguide with a diameter of 6.9 mm. The centre frequency of the filter is 9.4 GHz. The filter has a 3 dB bandwidth of 365 MHz and an insertion loss of 3.68 dB. The filter has a return loss of 19.4 dB.

The pedestal SIW resonator has since inception already been used in a variety of industrial filters, and has proven to be an excellent alternative to more classical planar resonators. The ability of the designer to choose an optimal compromise between size and performance is extremely useful, and it is currently one of very few structures which allows this. At the time of writing, it has become the focus of a large study to develop filter structures based on this topology.

technology. A better than 40 dB spurious-free attenuation is predicted from 7.2 to 15.5 GHz, with the main second pass-band centred at 16.24 GHz, or 2.32f₀.

The results of the two filters can be compared with existing solutions. In [2], full-sized microstrip and coplanar waveguide resonators are loaded with complementary split ring resonators (CSRRs). Two third-order filters, one at f₀ = 1.8 GHz and one at f₀ = 2.4 GHz, both with 10% relative bandwidth, achieve stopbands of better than 20 dB over, respectively, 5 and 8 GHz. In [20], a so-called 'butterfly resonator' is used in a single resonator low-pass filter with a cut-off of 1 GHz. This resonator achieved a very small size of 0.1 of a wavelength, and attenuation of 17 dB from 2.37 to 18 GHz. The author also provided a useful table of other planar resonators and their performance. While the stopbands of these filters are all very wide, they are all non-waveguide solutions, with

× 20 mm, with f₀ = 5 GHz, a 3 dB bandwidth of 320 MHz, insertion loss of 3.9 dB, and an attenuation of better than 40 dB from 5.5 to 6.5 GHz, and a filter with transverse dimensions of 45 × 12 mm, with f₀ = 5.45 GHz, a 3 dB bandwidth of 187 MHz, insertion loss of 5.8 dB, and an attenuation of better than 45 dB from up to 9 GHz. It should be clear that the proposed filters offer smaller footprints, similar insertion loss, and a wider stopband.

5 Conclusions

Pedestal SIW resonators are proposed which utilise the mode separation characteristics of ridge surface integrated waveguide, specifically T-ridge SIW guide. Two shapes of the pedestal resonator are compared with standard resonators, and are shown to offer a good compromise between size, Q-factor, and mode

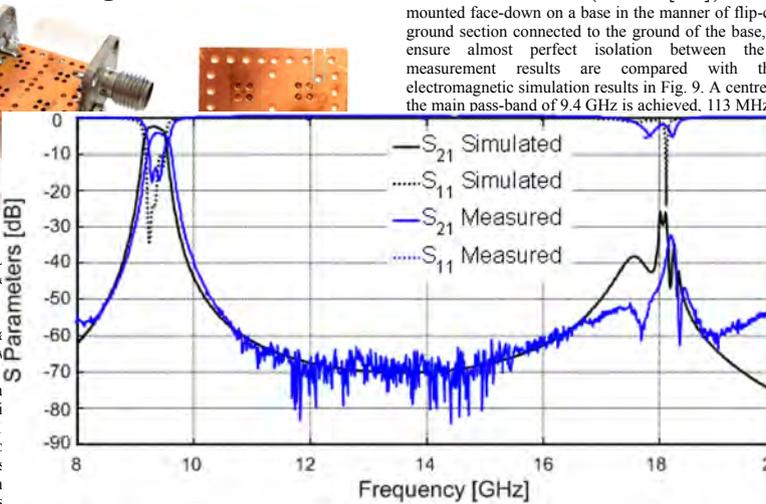


Fig. 9 Broadband measurement results for filter A

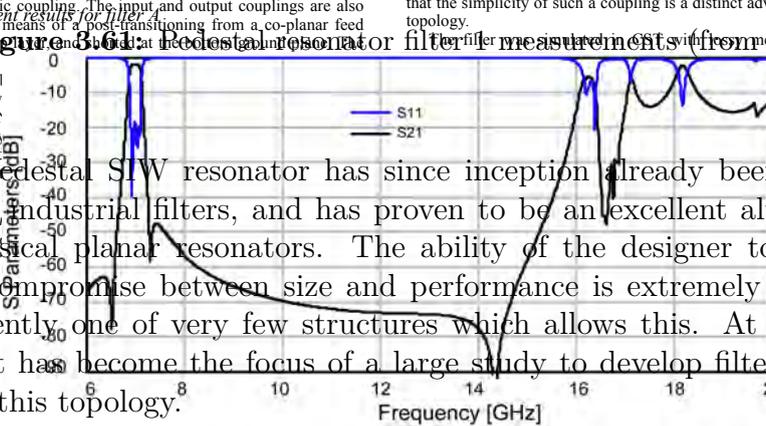


Fig. 10 Broadband simulation results for filter B

technology. A better than 40 dB spurious-free attenuation is predicted from 7.2 to 15.5 GHz, with the main second pass-band centred at 16.24 GHz, or 2.32f₀.

The results of the two filters can be compared with existing solutions. In [2], full-sized microstrip and coplanar waveguide resonators are loaded with complementary split ring resonators (CSRRs). Two third-order filters, one at f₀ = 1.8 GHz and one at f₀ = 2.4 GHz, both with 10% relative bandwidth, achieve stopbands of better than 20 dB over, respectively, 5 and 8 GHz. In [20], a so-called 'butterfly resonator' is used in a single resonator low-pass filter with a cut-off of 1 GHz. This resonator achieved a very small size of 0.1 of a wavelength, and attenuation of 17 dB from 2.37 to 18 GHz. The author also provided a useful table of other planar resonators and their performance. While the stopbands of these filters are all very wide, they are all non-waveguide solutions, with

mounted face-down on a base in the manner of flip-chips, with the ground section connected to the ground of the base, which should ensure almost perfect isolation between the ports. The measurement results are compared with the full-wave electromagnetic simulation results in Fig. 9. A centre frequency for the main pass-band of 9.4 GHz is achieved, 113 MHz above that of

ered filter is isolated value. The bandwidth was 365 MHz. The filter has a 3 dB bandwidth of 368 MHz. The filter has an insertion loss of 3.68 dB. The filter has a return loss of 19.4 dB. This

Due to the pedestals, though the in a square can only be compared, the pedestal obtain closer results. Note also that the tops of the pedestals do not couple. The filter has a 3 dB bandwidth of 365 MHz and an insertion loss of 3.68 dB. The filter has a return loss of 19.4 dB. This

that the simplicity of such a coupling is a distinct advantage of this topology.

Figure 3.61: Pedestal resonator filter 1 measurements (from [62])

lossy a short full wave is almost the centre of asymmetry. The frequency characteristics of any

technology. A better than 40 dB spurious-free attenuation is predicted from 7.2 to 15.5 GHz, with the main second pass-band centred at 16.24 GHz, or 2.32f₀.

The results of the two filters can be compared with existing solutions. In [2], full-sized microstrip and coplanar waveguide resonators are loaded with complementary split ring resonators (CSRRs). Two third-order filters, one at f₀ = 1.8 GHz and one at f₀ = 2.4 GHz, both with 10% relative bandwidth, achieve stopbands of better than 20 dB over, respectively, 5 and 8 GHz. In [20], a so-called 'butterfly resonator' is used in a single resonator low-pass filter with a cut-off of 1 GHz. This resonator achieved a very small size of 0.1 of a wavelength, and attenuation of 17 dB from 2.37 to 18 GHz. The author also provided a useful table of other planar resonators and their performance. While the stopbands of these filters are all very wide, they are all non-waveguide solutions, with

× 20 mm, with f₀ = 5 GHz, a 3 dB bandwidth of 320 MHz, insertion loss of 3.9 dB, and an attenuation of better than 40 dB from 5.5 to 6.5 GHz, and a filter with transverse dimensions of 45 × 12 mm, with f₀ = 5.45 GHz, a 3 dB bandwidth of 187 MHz, insertion loss of 5.8 dB, and an attenuation of better than 45 dB from up to 9 GHz. It should be clear that the proposed filters offer smaller footprints, similar insertion loss, and a wider stopband.

5 Conclusions

Pedestal SIW resonators are proposed which utilise the mode separation characteristics of ridge surface integrated waveguide, specifically T-ridge SIW guide. Two shapes of the pedestal resonator are compared with standard resonators, and are shown to offer a good compromise between size, Q-factor, and mode

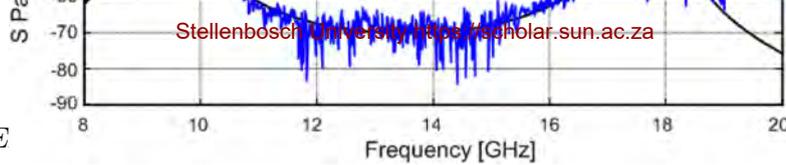


Fig. 9 Broadband measurement results for filter A

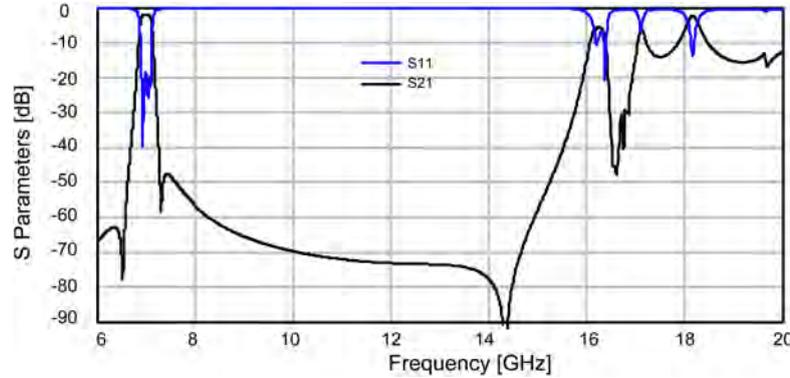


Fig. 10 Broadband simulation results for filter B

Figure 3.62: Pedestal resonator filter 2 measurements (from [62]).

technology. A better than 40 dB spurious-free attenuation is predicted from 7.2 to 15.5 GHz, with the main second pass-band centred at 16.24 GHz, or $2.32f_0$.

The results of the two filters can be compared with existing solutions. In [22] full-sized microstrip and coplanar waveguide resonators are loaded with complementary split ring resonators (CSRRs). Two third-order filters, one at $f_0 = 1.8$ GHz and one at $f_0 = 2.4$ GHz, both with a bandwidth of better than 20 dB over, respectively, 5 and 8 GHz. In [20], a so-called ‘butterfly resonator’ is used in a single resonator low-pass filter with a cutoff of 1 GHz. The dimensions are very small, size of 0.1 of a wavelength, and attenuation of 17 dB from 2.37 to 18 GHz. The authors also provided a comparison of pedestal resonators and their performance. While the stopbands of these filters are all very wide, they are all non-waveguide solutions, with lower Q -values than waveguide solutions. The stopbands are not as effectively approximate lumped elements, which accounts for the very wide stopbands. In terms of waveguide solutions, Saleh and Mehrshahi [16] used miniaturized SIW cavities with slow loading to design two filters at $f_0 = 10$ GHz and better than 30 dB attenuation stopbands of up to 10 GHz. In [21, 22], authors use cross-coupling of two parallel higher order modes to form transmission zeros distant from the pass-band, with, respectively, a 50 dB attenuation stopband of up to 7 GHz and 10 GHz for a fourth-order filter with a pass-band of 19.2 to 21.2 GHz and a 50 dB attenuation stopband of 0–10 GHz achieved for a third-order filter with a bandwidth of 1.3 GHz.

The most similar solutions to the structure proposed in this paper, are those in [23–25]. In [23], waveguides are loaded dielectrically to produce an asymmetric filter response. The filter, measuring $40 \times 40 \times 12$ mm, with $f_0 = 3.8$ GHz, a bandwidth of 3%, insertion loss of 0.4 dB, and better than 70 dB attenuation over the band 3.313–6 GHz. In [24], better than 20 dB attenuation over the band 4–5 GHz. Both [24, 25] use CSRRs to load SIW cavities, and, respectively, achieve a filter with transverse dimensions of 100

$\times 20$ mm, with $f_0 = 5$ GHz, a 3 dB bandwidth of 320 MHz, insertion loss of 3.9 dB, and an attenuation of better than 40 dB from 5.5 to 6.5 GHz, and a filter with transverse dimensions of 45×12 mm, with $f_0 = 5.45$ GHz, a 3 dB bandwidth of 187 MHz, insertion loss of 5.8 dB, and an attenuation of better than 45 dB up to 9 GHz. It should be clear that the proposed filters offer smaller footprints, similar insertion loss, and a wider stopband.

5. Conclusions

Pedestal SIW resonators are proposed which utilise the mode separation characteristics of ridge surface integrated waveguide, for various frequency bands. Two shapes of the pedestal resonator are compared with standard resonators, and are shown to offer a good compromise between size, Q -factor, and mode separation. Two fourth-order filters are designed, in PCB multilayered technology and performance verified, by both simulation and measurement. The results show an improved performance over published filters employing similar miniaturisation techniques.

6. Acknowledgments

The authors thank Reutech Radar Systems (Pty) Ltd for financial support of this project, and CST GmbH for the use of CST Microwave Studio.

7. References

- [1] Nassar, S., Meyer, P., Van der Walt, P.W.: An S-band combline filter with reduced size and increased pass-band flatness. *14th Conf. on Microwave Techniques (COMITE 2015)*, Pardubice, 2015
- [2] Garcia-Palacios, J., Mendez, F., Lopez, E.: Novel microwave filters with improved stopband based on sub-wavelength resonators. *IEEE Trans. Microw. Theory Tech.* **60**, pp. 1104–1110 (2012)
- [3] Djerani, T., Aubert, H., Wu, K.: Ridge substrate integrated waveguide (RSIW) dual-band hybrid ring couplers. *IEEE Microv. Compon. Lett.*, 2012, 22, pp. 10–12

The basis of the biasing network is shown in Fig. 3.63, where the electric and magnetic fields on a resonant halfwave line are shown together with the field orientations of a vertically connected biasing wire. Due to the orientation and the placing, the wire connects to a point of zero electric field on the line, with completely orthogonal magnetic fields. As neither of these fields change in position as the resonant frequency changes, the biasing line is *spatially decoupled* from the line for all frequencies. This is quite an advantage, as no extra circuitry is required, and the structure is theoretically of infinite bandwidth.

CSF Microwave Studio. For tight couplings, such a simulation should show a resonant point in the transmission coefficient at the resonant frequency of the resonator. Figs. 3c and d, respectively, show the simulated reflection coefficient for different pin diameters for the case where the pin is placed between the roof of the enclosure and the resonator, and between the bottom of the enclosure and the resonator. It is clear that for a resonator with line length 7.2 mm and line width 1.2 mm, a pin radius of

the figure shows the transmission coefficient from the excitation port to this port, where any transmission indicates energy which leaks out of the enclosure due to the biasing pin. By varying the radius of the dielectric (teflon) cylinder between the pin and the enclosure, and keeping the pin radius constant at 0.25 mm, a set of curves representing leakage can be obtained, as shown in the figure. It is clear that even for fairly large exit holes, the leakage is still small.

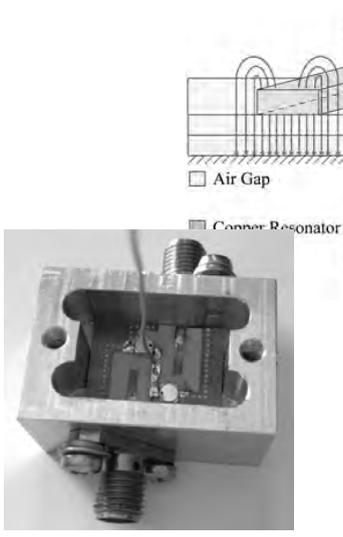


Fig. 4 Manufactured single resonator circuit with vertical biasing and varactors

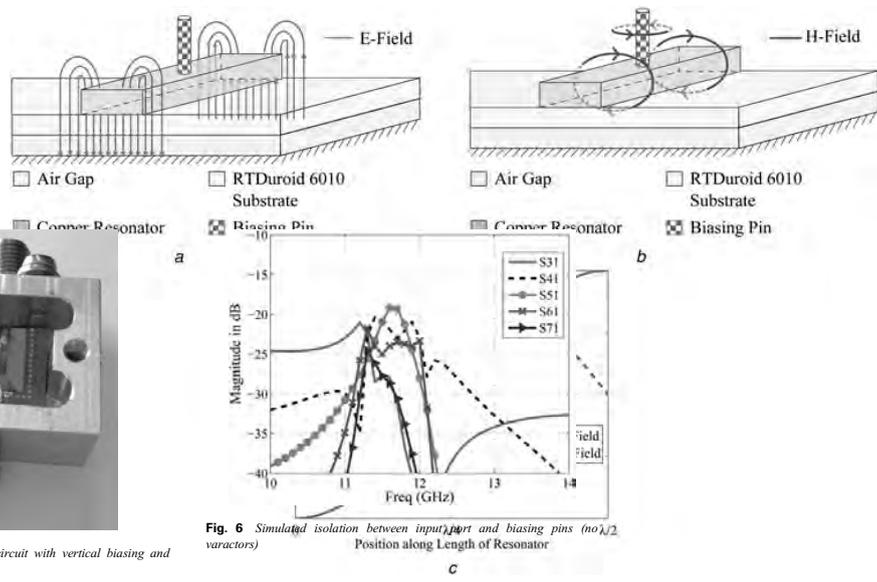


Fig. 6 Simulated isolation between input port and biasing pins (no $\lambda/2$ varactors)

Fig. 2 Electric and magnetic fields for an ideal case. (a) E-Field distribution. (b) H-Field distribution. The electric field will be maintained at the same position of the line, enabling the use of the proposed electrically tunable filters along the length of the enclosure. These varactors are used to change the centre frequency of the resonator, neither of these characteristics will change as they are both linked to the symmetry of the structure. This independence of frequency due to spatial coupling is a key feature of the proposed structure.

Chebyshev low-pass prototype and methods described in [1]. To achieve these frequencies, and for such a narrow bandwidth, stringent requirements must be met for the tuning elements, especially low parasitic resistance and inductance. In addition, the capacitance range must be of the order of 100 pF to 1 nF. For this purpose, the Skyworks SMV1405-240 varactor is at the tuning component. Owing to the sensitivity of parasitics at high frequencies, accurate measurement varactors are used in the design cycle and line coupling is used to reduce the parasitic inductance and capacitance. The proposed structure is designed to be a lumped element structure, as described in the single resonator circuit from Section 3. The filter structure with the enclosure is shown in Fig. 5a, with the exploded view of the components shown in Fig. 5b. The resonator has a length of 7.2 mm and a width of 1.8 mm, and the biasing pins are 1.75 mm apart, and between the feed line and resonator is 1.75 mm, and the length of the coupling line is 3.15 mm and width 0.71 mm, was inserted at the bottom of the substrate between the feed line and

3 Prototype filter

Planar staircase filters have for many years been one of the most popular classical filter topologies. As they can be designed from a coupled resonator perspective, they have been widely used. They are eminently suited to the biasing structure proposed here. To illustrate the biasing technique, a fifth-order staircase filter with a 3 dB bandwidth of 500 MHz at a nominal center frequency of 12 GHz, tunable from 11.75 to 12.25 GHz, is designed using a

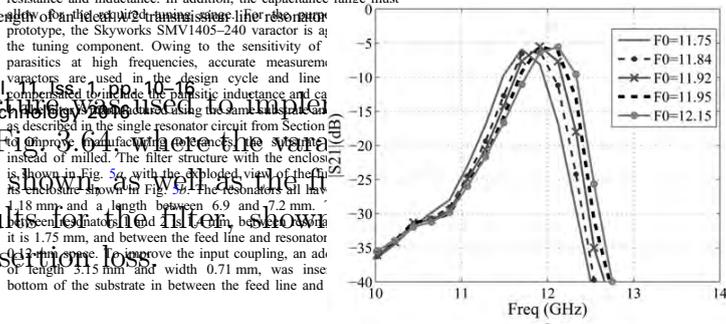
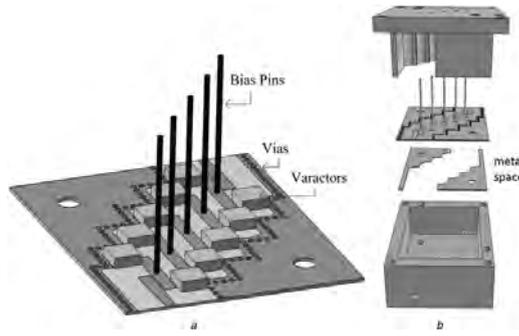


Figure 3.64: Tunable staircase filter using spatial decoupling (from [63])

Fig. 5 Tunable filter structure



IET Microw. Antennas Propag., 2017, Vol. 11, Iss. 1, pp. 10-18
© The Institution of Engineering and Technology 2016

Figure 3.65: Filter measurements

(a) Transmission coefficient from 10 to 14 GHz. (b) Return loss from 11.2 to 12.6 GHz.

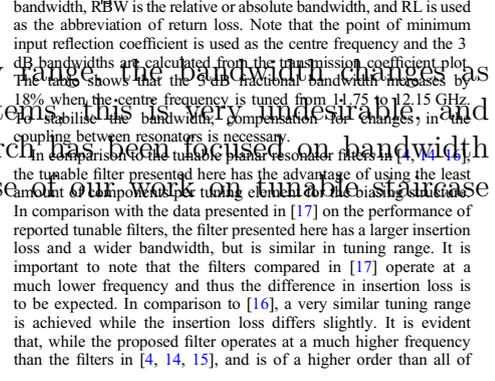


Table 3 Summary of the measured results

f_0 , GHz	3 dB FBW, %	3 dB RBW, MHz	-15 dB RL FBW, %	-15 dB RL RBW, MHz
11.75	3.58	420	2.04	240
11.84	3.55	420	2.11	250
11.92	4.03	480	2.60	310
11.95	4.01	480	2.59	310
12.15	4.23	510	2.39	290

Table 4 Comparison with recently published filters

Filter	Tuning frequencies, GHz
[4]	0.766-1.228
[14]	1-1.4
[15]	4.25-4.4 and 6.25-6.4
[16] presented	10.50-10.92 and 11.75-12.25

The filters compared in Table 4, are competitive with recently published filters.

5 Conclusion

A novel biasing structure for planar decoupling achieved through spatial decoupling is presented. The any decoupling circuit elements, by point of zero RF voltage, on a symmetrically with respect to the resonators, this point is stationary frequency, which is a significant advantage of the proposed structure is illustrated by X-band filter with varactors at each pair controlled by a single DC bias. The spatially decoupled bias feed. The each resonator enables compensation and tolerances, as well as the ability to tune the centre frequency. The biasing structure is an alternative for spatially constrained structures, as it is possible to incorporate lumped components and length of the biasing structure, thus eliminating decoupling circuitry and minimising

6 Acknowledgments

The authors thank the SKA for funding and W. van Eeden for the manufacturing of the RT Duroid samples, the Skyworks inc. for the varactor samples and AWR for the use of their simulation software.

7 References

- Matthaei, G.L., Young, L., Jones, E.M.T.: 'Microwave filters for engineers' (Artech House, 2004).
- Peroulis, D., Naglich, E., Sinani, M., et al.: 'Mag. Micro. Wirel. Eng.', 2014, 4, (46), pp. 1-14.
- Ocera, A., Famelli, P., Mezzanotte, R., et al.: 'A tunable filter on silicon substrate'. Proc. 30th European Microwave Conference, 2006, pp. 1124-1130.
- Huang, X., Feng, Q., Zhu, L., et al.: 'A compact wideband tunable filter using varactor-loaded open-loop resonators'. Proc. 2013, pp. 872-874.
- Xiang, Q., Feng, Q., Huang, X., et al.: 'Electrically tunable filters with constant bandwidth'. IEEE Trans. Antennas Propag., 2014, 62, (11), pp. 1124-1130.
- Sun, J.S., Kaneda, N., Baeyens, Y., et al.: 'Wide tuning bandwidth'. IEEE Trans. Antennas Propag., 2014, 62, (11), pp. 2864-2871.
- Sirci, S., Martinez, J.D., Taroncher, M.: 'A tunable SIW resonator for reconfigurable antennas'. Proc. 2015, 3, (63), pp. 946-951.
- Flammia, I., Khani, B., Arafat, S., et al.: 'Waveguide-to-substrate-integrated-waveguide'. Electron. Lett., 2014, 50, (1), pp. 34-35.
- Hoffmann, R.K.: 'Handbook of microwave engineering', 1987, pp. 325-336.

As filters are tuned over a frequency range, the bandwidth of the filter will also change. For fixed absolute bandwidth systems, the bandwidth of the filter will change as the centre frequency changes. An important part of tunable filter research is the control of these filters. The second phase of this research has been focused on bandwidth control of these filters. In comparison with the tunable planar resonator filters in [14, 15], the tunable filter presented here has the advantage of using the least amount of lumped components, and the ability to tune the centre frequency. In comparison with the data presented in [17], a very similar tuning range is achieved while the insertion loss differs slightly. It is evident that, while the proposed filter operates at a much higher frequency than the filters in [4, 14, 15], and is of a higher order than all of

filters was therefore a proposal for the control of the inter-resonator couplings. For this, my PhD student Dr Satyam Sharma and myself proposed a novel type of tunable inverter, based on a non-resonant-node (NRN) placed between resonators [65], [66].

The principle for this tunable NRN inverter is shown in Fig. 3.66, with the NRN realised by a short piece of line, terminated at both ends by a varactor diode to ground. The resulting equivalent circuit shows that a change in the varactor capacitance will result in change in the inverter value. As the coupling coefficient between resonators are directly controlled by this inverter constant, a tunable coupling is realised in this way.

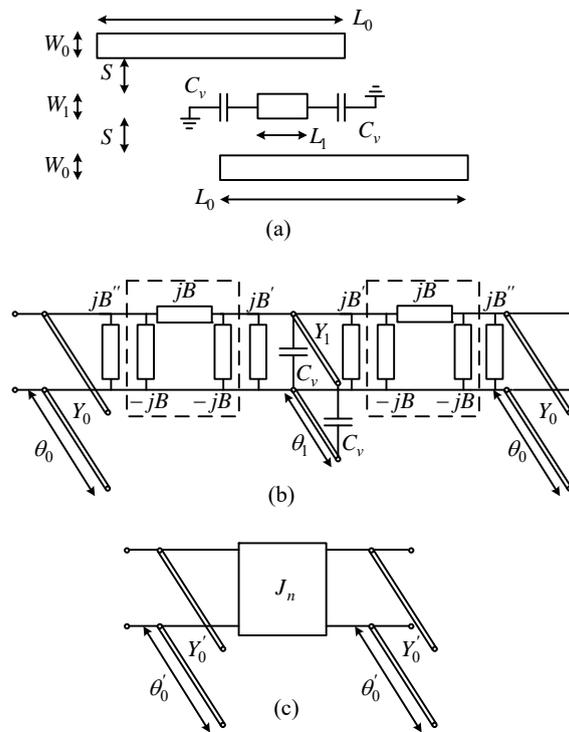


Figure 3.66: Non-resonant node inverter principle (from [65])

Fig. 2: Equivalent NI circuit

Fig.3.67 shows simulation results for the change in coupling coefficient as a function of the varactor capacitance, with varying range of coupling values clearly realizable. Unfortunately such a structure will support a spurious resonance frequency, which will also be dependent on the varactor capacitance. This is shown in Fig. 3.68, and needs to be tightly controlled.

A set of tunable staircase filters, with tunable NRN inverters and using the TEM coupled-line planar filter, was designed and tested, shown in Fig. 3.69. In order to compensate for the change in loaded Q-values

The design of tunable NRN inverters and using the TEM coupled-line planar filter, was designed and tested, shown in Fig. 3.69. In order to compensate for the change in loaded Q-values

Using the eigenmode solver in CST, the coefficients and resonant frequencies can be calculated. Modal resonant frequencies using standard formulae shows the variation of coupling value as a function of width (W1) for various values of spacing (S). For Cv = 0. The observed inverse dependence of coupling coefficient on the varactor capacitance is shown in Fig. 3.67.

To simplify the model, the capacitively loaded line is replaced with an equivalent unloaded line, with admittance Y1' and electrical length theta1', where

$$(Y_1')^2 = Y_1^2 + 2\omega C_v Y_1 \cot \theta_1 - \omega^2 C_v^2$$

$$\sin \theta_1' = \frac{Y_1'}{Y_1} \sin \theta_1$$

Using the same procedure as in section II, the inverter value is obtained as

$$B_n = -\frac{B^2}{Y_1' \tan \theta_1' + 2B'}$$

Equivalent shunt transmission line resonators are calculated by adding B' and Bn to the input admittance, resulting in the inverter-coupled equivalent circuit with Jn = Bn.

The relationship in (11) is of limited use, as it is dependent on the line widths and spacings, but also on the position of the NRN with respect to the adjacent resonators and Cv. A closed-form expression for B can be derived, but is very cumbersome, and of little use. An approximate proportionality relationship can however be established by recognising from [22] that B is proportional to

$$B_n \approx -\frac{B_{n0}^2 \tan \theta_1'}{Y_1'}$$

where Bn0 is a length-independent coupling coefficient [65] which is only dependent on the line widths and spacings. If B' is assumed small. An exact analysis for ideal inverter, which includes all effects, is presented in the Appendix IV.

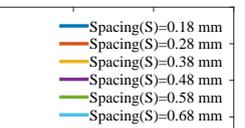
IV. IMPLEMENTATION IN MICROSTRIP

For implementation in quasi-TEM structures such as microstrip, the derivation in the Appendix neglects the effects at the ends of the lines, as well as the propagation aspects of the even and odd modes. This has a significant effect on the coupling values. To give more accurate results, the structure in Fig. 2(a) can be analysed using the CST Microwave Studio.

To obtain half-wavelength microstrip resonators on a 4003C substrate with epsilon_r = 3.38 and a thickness of 0.508 mm, the dimensions are chosen for the study. With reference to the nominal dimensions are L0 = 17 mm, L1 = 1.75 mm and W1 = W0 = 1.175 mm. In isolation, the resonators have a nominal resonant frequency of 5 GHz and Z0 = 50. In order to get maximum variation between resonators, the NI is placed symmetrically between the resonators.

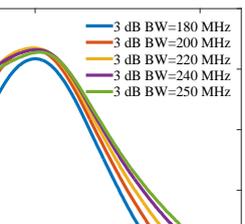
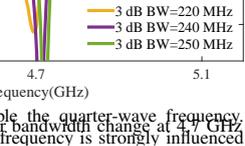
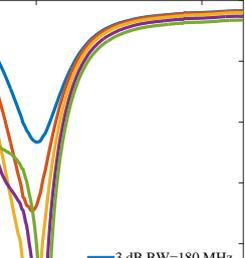
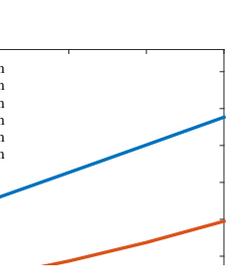
Using the eigenmode solver in CST, the coefficients and resonant frequencies can be calculated. Modal resonant frequencies using standard formulae shows the variation of coupling value as a function of width (W1) for various values of spacing (S). For Cv = 0. The observed inverse dependence of coupling coefficient on the varactor capacitance is shown in Fig. 3.67.

with larger spacings resulting in therefore smaller coupling values.



coupling coefficient is shown as a function of spacings (S), again for $C_v = 0$. In this case, the change in θ_1 dominates the behaviour, resulting in an increase in coupling coefficient for increasing NRN-length. Variations in spacing again mostly influences $B_{n,0}$ as before.

The measured results for a range of centre frequencies are shown in Fig. 3.70 and Fig.3.71. A tunable range of almost 1GHz is achieved, with a fixed bandwidth of 200MHz across the full tuning range. Fig. 3.72 shows the measurement of bandwidth in the centre frequency is achieved using a sharp



used for biasing. From classical coupled resonator theory, it follows that to achieve a fixed absolute bandwidth and a set reflection coefficient simultaneously, for a varying centre frequency, the input and output q-factors must change with frequency. In the prototype proposed here, such a compensation is implemented by adding a varactor diode to the end of each feed line

for diodes ($C_t \sim 0.63 - 2.67\text{pf}$, R_s presents, a filter is realised which can bandwidth over a 1GHz band. tested on Rogers RO4003C substrate constant $\epsilon_r = 3.38$ and loss tangent substrate thickness 0.508 mm. After final filter dimensions are $L_1 = 28$ $W_4 = 1.15$ mm, $S_1 = 0.2$ mm, $L_2 = 2$ mm, and $S_2 = S_3 = 0.26$ mm. shown in Fig. 11, with a photograph

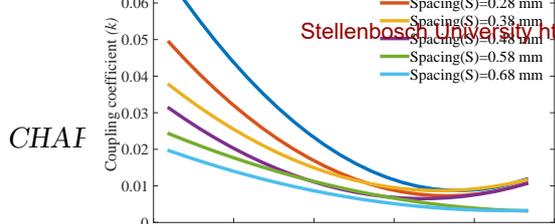


Fig. 3: Coupling vs width of NRN. In this case, the change in θ_1 dominates the behaviour, resulting in an increase in coupling coefficient for increasing NRN-length. Variations in spacing again mostly influences $B_{n,0}$ as before.

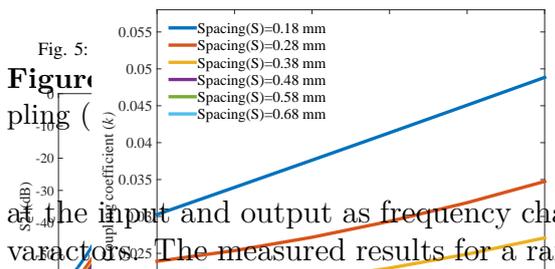


Fig. 4: Coupling vs length of NRN. The measured results for a range of centre frequencies are shown in Fig. 3.70 and Fig.3.71. A tunable range of almost 1GHz is achieved, with a fixed bandwidth of 200MHz across the full tuning range. Fig. 3.72 shows the measurement of bandwidth in the centre

frequency is achieved using a sharp lowering of the frequency. It is therefore imperative that this behaviour is included in the design. For such an investigation, a Spice model of the MA46H120 varactor diode operating between 0-12V is used as a variable capacitance. This voltage range results in a capacitance variation of approximately 0.2 pF. Using tightly edge-coupled lines to input and output ports, a two-port analysis is performed using the CST frequency solver within the CST simulator, and the results shown in Fig. 3.70. The position of the spurious frequency is clearly visible in the graph, and is strongly influenced by the varactor strongly attenuates the signal at this frequency. Furthermore, in a higher-order filter, these spurious points will not fade, diminishing their influence even further. Nevertheless, it is clear that this behaviour must be considered in the design of a filter, as it can limit the stop-band attenuation. In filters requiring high stop-band attenuation, it may even be required to add a low-order low-pass filter before or after the main filter.

V. FILTER CONSTRUCTION AND MEASUREMENT

Three microstrip staircase filters were designed and tested using the proposed tunable NRN implementation. In all cases, the following design steps were performed: (1) General design equations presented in [19] are utilized to calculate coupling coefficients and external quality factors

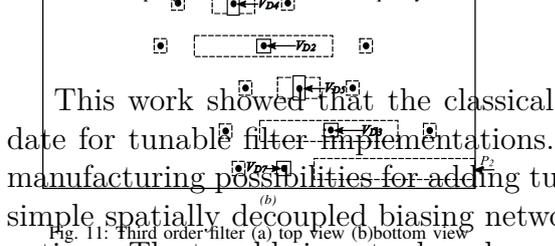


Fig. 11: Third order filter (a) top view (b) bottom view. This work showed that the classical staircase filter is an excellent candidate for tunable filter implementations. The symmetry of fields, and simple manufacturing possibilities for adding tunable components, as well as the very simple spatially decoupled biasing network, offer cost-effective manufacturing options. The tunable inverter based on an NRN represents the first implementation of such a structure, based on rigorous synthesis techniques.

Fig. 12: Fabricated third order filter with Q_e tuning circuit. The authors thank the National Research Foundation (NRF) of South Africa for financial assistance with this work, as well as CST for the use of their software.

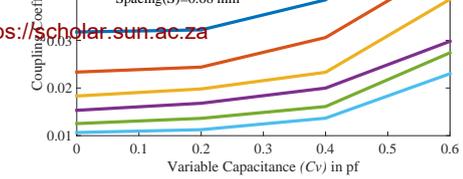


Fig. 5: Coupling coefficient for different capacitances

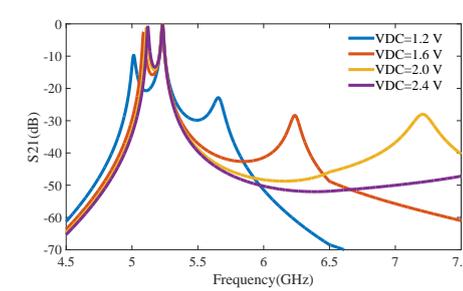


Fig. 6: Spurious response for different DC bias voltage ranges

Figure 3.68: Tunable NRN spurious response (from [65])

capacitance causing a sharp lowering of the frequency. It is therefore imperative that this behaviour is included in the design. For such an investigation, a Spice model of the MA46H120 varactor diode operating between 0-12V is used as variable capacitance. This voltage range results in a capacitance variation of approximately 0.2 pF. Using tightly edge-coupled lines to input and output ports, a two-port analysis is performed using the CST frequency solver within the CST simulator, and the results shown in Fig. 6. The position of the spurious frequency is clearly visible in the graph, and is strongly influenced by the varactor strongly attenuates the signal at this frequency. Furthermore, in a higher-order filter, these spurious points will not fade, diminishing their influence even further. Nevertheless, it is clear that this behaviour must be considered in the design of a filter, as it can limit the stop-band attenuation. In filters requiring high stop-band attenuation, it may even be required to add a low-order low-pass filter before or after the main filter.

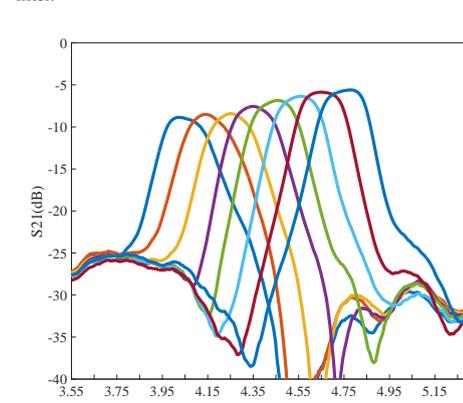


Fig. 16: Measured S21 for the third order filter with input and output compensation

Figure 3.70: Tunable NRN filter measurements S21 (from [65])

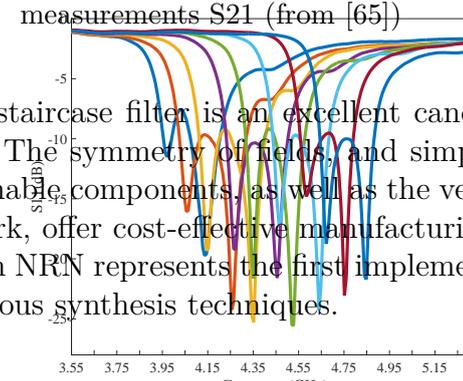


Fig. 17: Measured S11 for the third order filter with input and output compensation

The proposed technique is not limited to certain orders of filters, and also not specifically to the staircase topologies used as illustration, but can be used for any Coupled-Resonator topology. For frequencies above 5 GHz, higher order filters will however suffer significant insertion loss due to the finite and relatively low varactor Q-factors.

VII. ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

The authors thank the National Research Foundation (NRF) of South Africa for financial assistance with this work, as well as CST for the use of their software.



Fig. 18: Third order filter bandpass output compensation



Fig. 19: Filter topology using

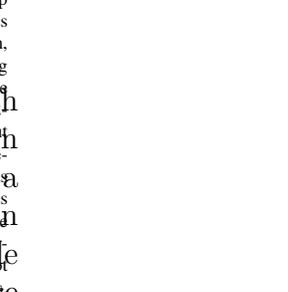


Fig. 19: Filter topology using

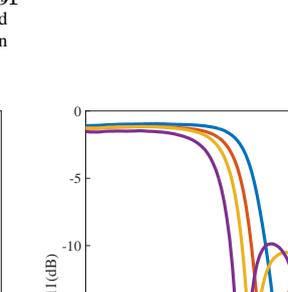


Fig. 19: Filter topology using

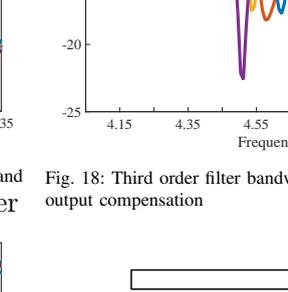


Fig. 19: Filter topology using

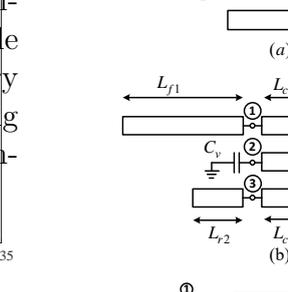


Fig. 19: Filter topology using

due to the terminations of the lines, it is possible. Following [21], the 3-line coupled-line section between nodes 2 and 5 is identical with

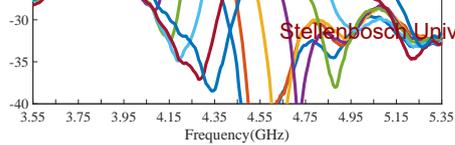


Fig. 16: Measured S21 for the third order filter with input and output compensation

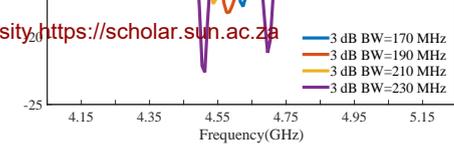


Fig. 18: Third order filter bandwidth variation with input and output compensation

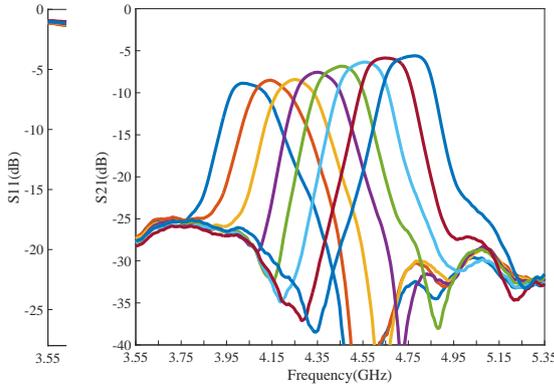


Fig. 17: Measured S11 and S21 for the third order filter with input and output compensation

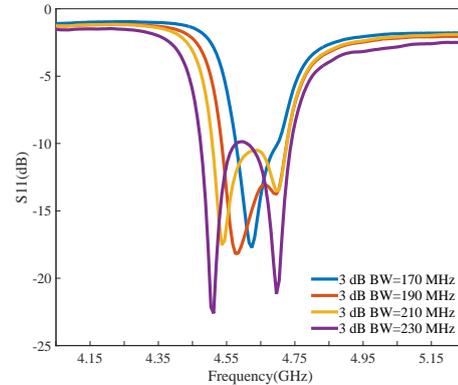


Fig. 18: Third order filter bandwidth variation with input and output compensation

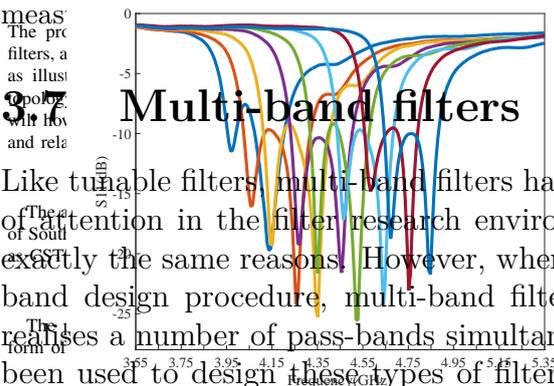


Fig. 17: Measured S11 and S21 for the third order filter with input and output compensation

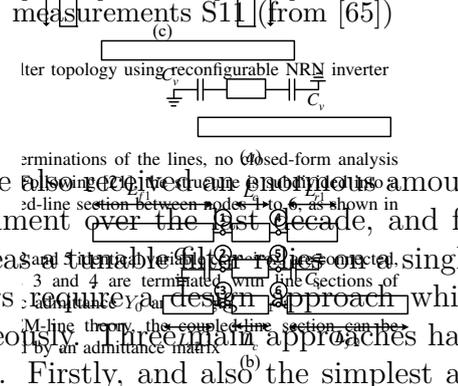


Fig. 18: Third order filter bandwidth variation with input and output compensation

3.7 Multi-band filters

Like tunable filters, multi-band filters have also received an enormous amount of attention in the filter research environment over the last decade, and for exactly the same reasons. However, whereas a tunable filter relies on a single-band design procedure, multi-band filters require a design approach which realises a number of pass-bands simultaneously. Three main approaches have been used to design these types of filters. Firstly, and also the simplest approach, is the interconnection of single-band filters. This approach typically results in larger structures, with performance degradation due to the interconnection structures. A second popular approach has been to use resonators with multiple resonances to create multiple pass-bands, with especially Stepped Impedance Resonators (SIR) proving to be quite popular. While centre frequencies can readily be controlled in this way, the control over pass-band bandwidths are challenging, especially for higher order filters. However, this technique has the advantage of fundamental size and the ability to accommodate cases where there is a wide separation between the pass bands.

The last, and most rigorous, methods to design multi-band filters are to either construct the approximation function to include multiple bands, and perform a standard synthesis, or to transform the approximation function and consequently the low-pass elements as well, to a multi-band one. The latter approach can also be viewed as an extension of the standard low-pass to band-pass transform. This approach makes it possible to design multi-band filters with pre-determined topologies and transfer functions, but has the disadvantage that the responses of all the bands are determined by the original prototype response.

In 2014, a rigorous theoretical background for the design of multi-band filters had not been established, and most designs relied on a mixture of approximate design and optimisation. Together with my PhD student Dr Gerdus

Figure 3.72: Tunable NRN filter measurements S11 (from [65])

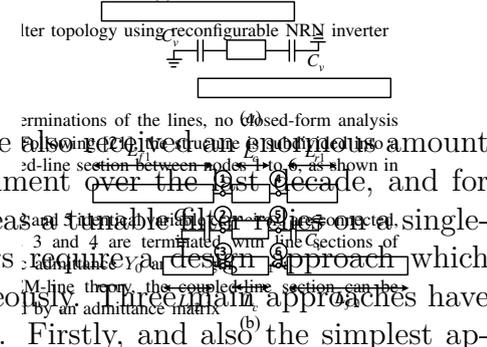


Fig. 19: Filter topology using reconfigurable NRN inverter

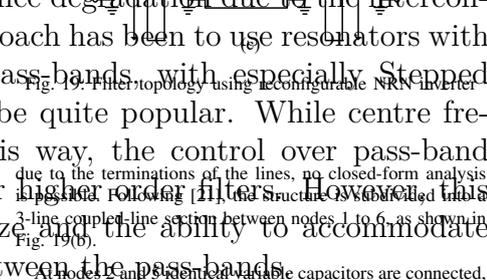


Fig. 19: Filter topology using reconfigurable NRN inverter

Brandt, we therefore set out to derive such a procedure. This led to a formal mathematical procedure to transform a low-pass transfer function of any form, to a multi-band one of arbitrary order, and with arbitrary bands, using no optimisation, and only exact transformations [67], [68].

The basic transformation problem is shown in Fig. 3.73, where a single-band, low-pass transfer function has to be transformed into a multi-band function with arbitrary band-edge frequencies. *Designing Multiband Coupled-Resonator Filters* 83

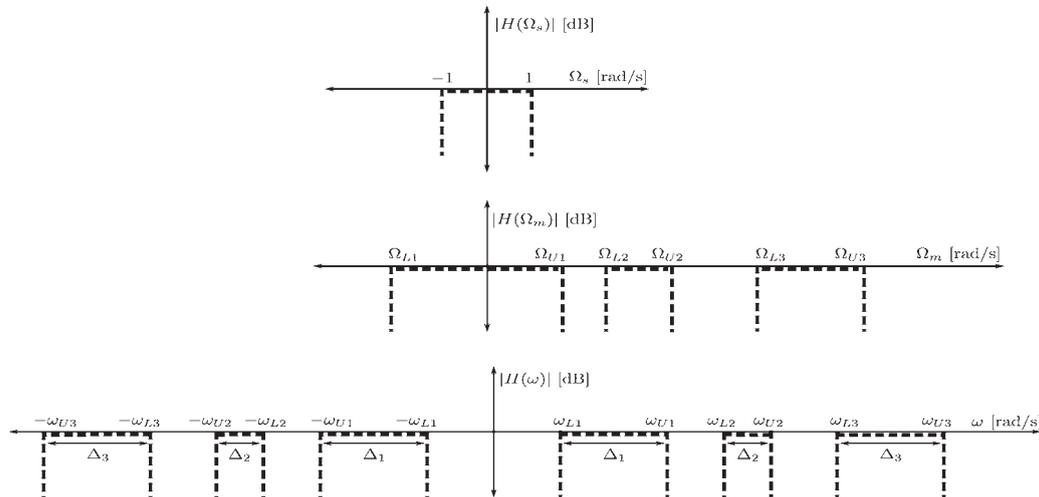


Figure 1 Low-pass to multiband response transformation using an unsymmetrical intermediate response.

Figure 3.73: Multiband frequency transform (from [68])

LC-network, transformed through a band-pass to low-pass transformation, as given in (1).

To find a function to do this is not trivial. For a pure polynomial mapping function $\Omega_s(\Omega_m)$ the minimum order Lagrange interpolation polynomial can be constructed to map each band-edge as required. However, the behaviour of the function between these points can in this case not be specified, and the function can easily map parts of the low-pass stop-band into pass-bands. Both these aspects are significant drawbacks. The rational function in (1) has N zeros, z_1, \dots, z_N , and $N+1$ poles, p_1, \dots, p_{N+1} , $p_{N+1} = \infty$. With $z_1 < p_1$ the polynomial can be increased to create more degrees of freedom. This however pass filtering function evaluation, as the frequency real-valued zeros, frequency real and imaginary parts of the zeros, and the possibility of straying into forbidden regions becomes even higher.

multiband frequency axis is a bandwidth-scaled replica of the low-pass filtering function. In addition to satisfying the mapping requirements, the polynomial mapping function has the following important advantages:

- Each pass-band has the exact same reflection and transmission responses as the original low-pass transfer function.
- The centre frequency and bandwidth for each band can be chosen completely arbitrarily.
- By simply choosing the correct poles and zeros, or equivalently the pass-band edges for each band, a valid

Optimisation of the polynomial coefficients therefore becomes necessary, and in many cases a solution does not exist.

In contrast, a rational fraction with poles and zeros offers a much improved mapping function, as the pole and zero positions can be specified separately. While an infinite number of rational functions can be constructed, we showed that the classical LC one-port reactance function can be used very effectively for this purpose, and is indeed an superb function to use, as it also maps

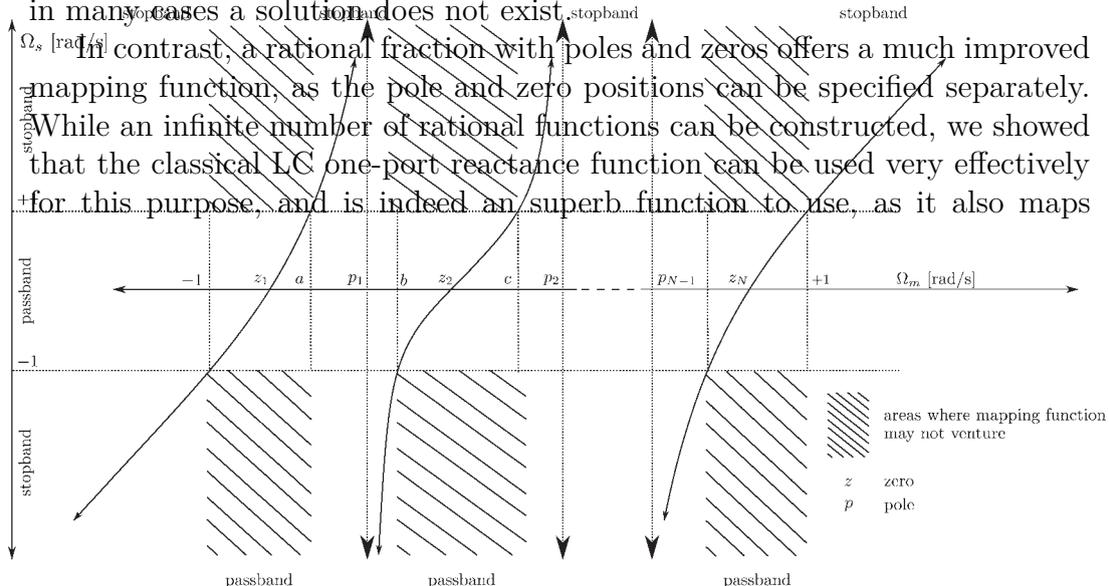


Figure 2 Graphical representation of the ideal frequency mapping function

LC-network, transformed through a band-pass to low-pass transformation, as given in (1).

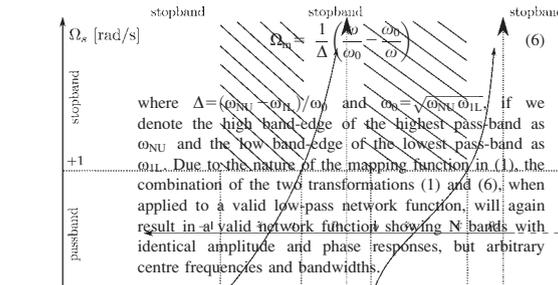
CHAPTER 3. MICROWAVE FILTERS

$$\Omega_s(\Omega_m) = \frac{\alpha_N \Omega_m^N + \alpha_{N-1} \Omega_m^{N-1} + \dots + \alpha_1 \Omega_m + \alpha_0}{\beta_{N-1} \Omega_m^{N-1} + \dots + \beta_1 \Omega_m + 1} = \frac{P(\Omega_m)}{Q(\Omega_m)} \quad (1)$$

reactive circuit elements only to other reactive circuit elements. Such a transformation function is shown in Fig. 3.74, with the corresponding element transformations in Fig. 3.75 and Fig. 3.76 and can be seen to be an angle-order extension of the classical low-pass to band-pass transformation. The advantages of this transformation function are manifold, as discussed in [68].

(1). As a consequence, each $p_i \rightarrow z_i \rightarrow p_i$ in the terms of the equivalent low-pass bands

multiband frequency axis is a bandwidth-scaled replica of the low-pass transfer function, and the mapping requirements, this choice of mapping function has the following important advantages:



where $\Delta = (\omega_{N1} - \omega_{N1})/\omega_0$ and $\omega_0 = \sqrt{\omega_{N1}\omega_{1L}}$. If we denote the high band-edge of the highest pass-band as ω_{N1} and the low band-edge of the lowest pass-band as ω_{1L} . Due to the nature of the mapping function in (1), the combination of the two transformations (1) and (6), when applied to a valid low-pass network function, will again result in a valid network function showing N bands with identical amplitude and phase responses, but arbitrary centre frequencies and bandwidths.

III. IMPLEMENTATION AS COUPLED-RESONATOR STRUCTURE

Once a transformation function is found, a multiband coupled-resonator filter structure can simply be implemented by designing a low-pass coupled-reactance filter using standard techniques, followed by a step in which each reactive element is replaced by a reactive circuit. This is done in a four-step procedure.

Step 1. As a first step, each reactive element in the low-pass filter is replaced with a circuit which is the direct network function of the original low-pass transfer function.

Figure 3.74: Multiband frequency transform function (from [68])

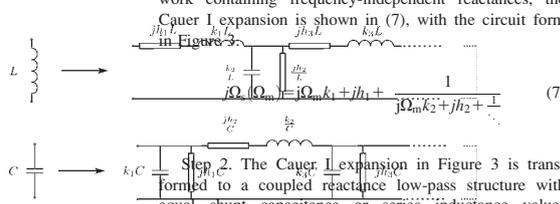


Figure 3.75: Multiband LC transform

form (from [68])

$$\Omega_m = \frac{1}{\Delta} \left(\frac{\omega}{\omega_0} \right) \quad (6)$$

where $\Delta = (\omega_{N1} - \omega_{1L})/\omega_0$ and $\omega_0 = \sqrt{\omega_{N1}\omega_{1L}}$. If we denote the high band-edge of the highest pass-band as ω_{N1} and the low band-edge of the lowest pass-band as ω_{1L} . Due to the nature of the mapping function in (1), the combination of the two transformations (1) and (6), when applied to a valid low-pass network function, will again result in a valid network function showing N bands with identical amplitude and phase responses, but arbitrary centre frequencies and bandwidths.

III. IMPLEMENTATION AS COUPLED-RESONATOR STRUCTURE

Once a transformation function is found, a multiband coupled-resonator filter structure can simply be implemented by designing a low-pass coupled-reactance filter using standard techniques, followed by a step in which each reactive element is replaced by a reactive circuit. This is done in a four-step procedure.

Step 1. As a first step, each reactive element in the low-pass filter is replaced with a circuit which is the direct network function of the original low-pass transfer function. This is done in a four-step procedure.

Step 2. The Cauer I expansion in Figure 3 is transformed to a coupled reactance low-pass structure with equal shunt capacitance or series inductance values coupled by J or K inverters, respectively. The frequency-

$$j\Omega_m(\Omega_m) = j\Omega_m k_1 + j\Omega_m + \frac{1}{j\Omega_m k_2 + j\Omega_m + \frac{1}{j\Omega_m k_3 + j\Omega_m + \dots}} \quad (7)$$

Step 2. The Cauer I expansion in Figure 3 is transformed to a coupled reactance low-pass structure with equal shunt capacitance or series inductance values coupled by J or K inverters, respectively. The frequency-

independent reactance/susceptances are also transformed using the same inverter constants.

Step 3. Each frequency-dependant element in the resulting coupled-reactance structure is replaced by the standard resonant circuit obtained from the transform in (6). This results in a classical coupled-resonator structure with the addition of a frequency-independent reactance or susceptance in each arm. Note that, as all the frequency-dependent elements in a low-pass coupled-reactance circuit are normally chosen to be equal, all of the expanded networks will be identical.

Step 4. An equivalent resonator is constructed for each arm by the combination of the resonant circuit obtained by application of (6), with the frequency-independent reactance in that arm, as shown in Figure 4. For the case of a shunt capacitance for instance, the admittance of a branch in the low-pass coupled-resonator circuit will be given by (8).

$$Y(j\Omega_m) = j\Omega_m C + jB \quad (8)$$

Using the transform in (6), we obtain the admittance of an arm in the final multiband filter as

$$Y(j\Omega_m) = j\Omega_m C + jB \quad (9)$$

where C' and L' are the element values for the equivalent resonator, and ω_0 is the new resonant frequency. To calculate these values, we note that at resonance the input

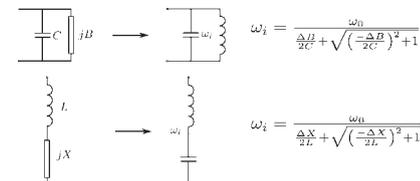


Figure 3.76: Multiband resonator transform (from [68])

form (from [68])

transform (from [68])

The method was illustrated for various filters, with a triple-band one shown in Fig. 3.77, together with an ideal response in Fig. 3.78. As the transformation is exact, there is of course no theoretical limit on the number, or edge-frequencies, of the final network. The only limitation is that each band is an exact copy of the original low-pass transfer function.

The procedure was also applied to a triple-band waveguide filter, yielding the filter in Fig. 3.79, with simulated electromagnetic response shown in Fig. 3.80. As a practical example, a triple-band, twelfth-order filter, using coaxial resonators, was also designed and tested [67]. The filter layout and a photograph

Figure 9 (a) Low-pass circuit. Refer to Fig 7 for symbol definition.

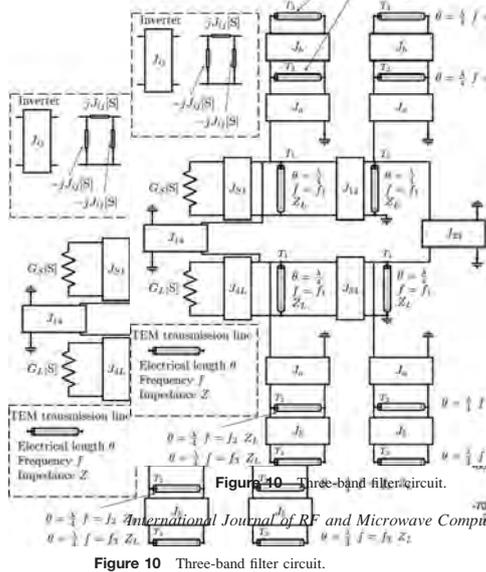


Figure 10 Three-band filter circuit.

Figure 3.77: Multiband filter (from [68])

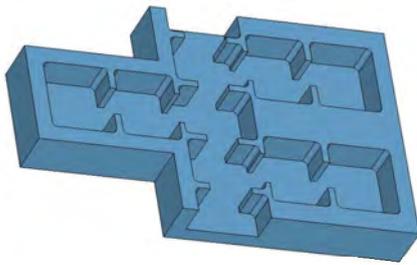


Figure 3.79: Multiband waveguide filter (from [69])

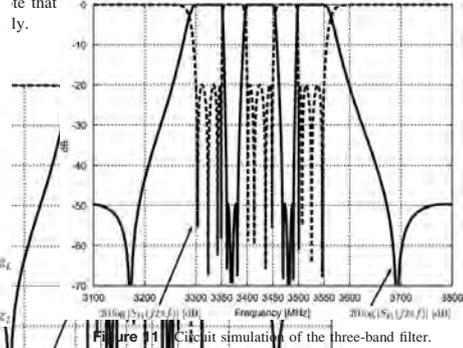


Figure 11 Circuit simulation of the three-band filter.

Figure 3.78: Multiband filter response (from [68])

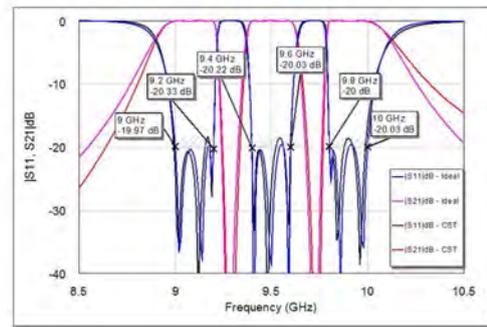
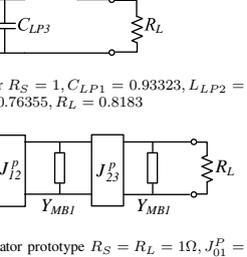


Figure 3.80: Multiband waveguide filter response (from [69])

is shown in Fig. 3.81 and Fig. 3.82, with the measured results in Fig. 3.83 and Fig. 3.84. One of the main drawbacks of these filters is clearly shown here, i.e. the effects of loss in at least one of the pass-bands. Another aspect which clearly emerged from the practical example, was the extreme difficulty in tuning such a multi-band filter, an issue which is largely ignored by the research community.

For me, the work on multi-band filters represents one of my best research efforts, as it provides a rigorous synthesis framework for a complete class of filters, and is inclusive of numerous published filters which were designed using partial versions of this theory. It is an elegant method, with virtually no theoretical limitations, and no special validity conditions beyond the normal ones of passivity and the absence of loss.



Resonator prototype $R_S = R_L = 1\Omega$, $J_{01}^P = 0.76355$, $C_{LP1} = 0.93323$, $L_{LP2} = 0.0099480$, $R_L = 0.8183$

Form of this filter is shown in Fig. 9(a). The capacitance of the coupled resonator is given in Fig. 9(a).

The capacitance mapping function is constructed using numerical manipulation, a technique that was followed for the calculation of the coupling apertures, mainly a systematic group delay based procedure. It should be noted that this is not a trivial process due to the complexity of the structure. The filter was constructed using a square waveguide with a height of 15mm and a width of 15mm. The coupling aperture and wall are identical, which makes square waveguide resonators simpler. The filter is simulated using CST Microwave Studio. The results are shown in Figs. 16(a) and 16(b). Note that the simulation is carried out first by using the classical two-resonator eigenvalue technique to realize the calculated coupling coefficients.

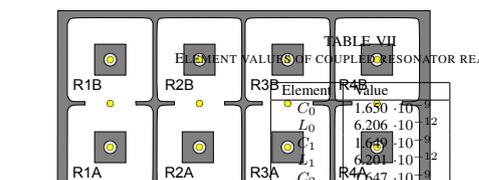
TABLE VI
MAPPING FUNCTION

Elements	Value
C_{LP1}	-2.7349
C_{LP2}	-2.4893
C_{LP3}	-0.75405
L_{LP1}	-0.054545
L_{LP2}	-0.099480
L_{LP3}	-0.8794
R_L	-0.45276

TABLE VII
COUPLED RESONATOR REALIZATION

Element	Value
C_0	$1.650 \cdot 10^{-9}$
L_0	$6.206 \cdot 10^{-12}$
C_1	$1.649 \cdot 10^{-9}$
L_1	$6.201 \cdot 10^{-12}$
C_2	$1.647 \cdot 10^{-9}$
L_2	$6.193 \cdot 10^{-12}$
R_1	0.8794
R_2	0.6941

of the coupling apertures are listed in table VIII. w and d denotes the wall thickness and aperture width, respectively. The filter is symmetrical, therefore not all the dimensions are shown. Resonator 1 and resonator 2 are connected by extending the centre pin of an SMA connector to connect with the inner conductor of the other SMA connector. The final filter is shown in Fig. 14, with a photograph of the constructed filter in Fig. 15.



The constructed filter is physically tuned following the same procedure that was followed for the calculation of the coupling apertures, mainly a systematic group delay based procedure. It should be noted that this is not a trivial process due to the complexity of the structure. The filter was constructed using a square waveguide with a height of 15mm and a width of 15mm. The coupling aperture and wall are identical, which makes square waveguide resonators simpler. The filter is simulated using CST Microwave Studio. The results are shown in Figs. 16(a) and 16(b). Note that the simulation is carried out first by using the classical two-resonator eigenvalue technique to realize the calculated coupling coefficients.

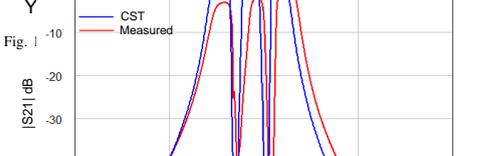
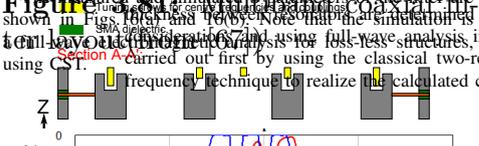


Figure 3.83: Multiband coaxial filter measurements (from [67])

The work has been included in two books on the design of filters which do not fit into any of the categories in this chapter. [70], and the other the highly regarded *Modern Communication Systems - 2nd edition* by Prof. Bernard Cameron. The work also led to collaboration on a more general book on the design of filters which do not fit into any of the categories in this chapter. [71].

3.8 Other Filters

It is clear that the filter is well-matched over the correct bands, with a small detuning of the upper band. The loss in the low frequency band is fairly high, but it should be noted that the relative bandwidth of each band is only 2%, and that neither the filter nor the tuning screws were silver-plated. A few of them are discussed in this section. In no particular order, these have been published, a number was designed for commercial purposes and therefore never published. The first of these is a novel extension of the evanescent-mode PIN-diode switch from [72], using the same structure to create a tunable X-band evanescent-mode filter [64]. In principle, this is simply achieved by replacing the PIN-diodes with varactor diodes, as shown in Fig. 3.85. In practice however, a complete re-design is required, using a filter procedure instead of a switch design procedure. The measured results of a prototype filter are shown in

The constructed filter is physically tuned following the same procedure that was followed for the calculation of the coupling apertures, mainly a systematic group delay based procedure. It should be noted that this is not a trivial process due to the complexity of the filter. Fortunately, the natural consequence of the design process is a filter of which all the 'legs' are identical, which makes the tuning process significantly simpler. The measured and simulated S-parameters of the filter are shown in Figs. 16(a) and 16(b). Note that the simulation is a full-wave electromagnetic analysis for loss-less structures, using CST.

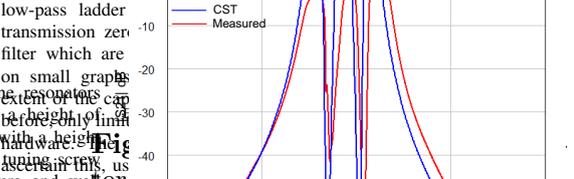
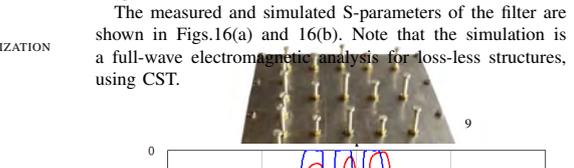


Figure 3.84: Multiband coaxial filter measurements (from [67])

The work has been included in two books on the design of filters which do not fit into any of the categories in this chapter. [70], and the other the highly regarded *Modern Communication Systems - 2nd edition* by Prof. Bernard Cameron. The work also led to collaboration on a more general book on the design of filters which do not fit into any of the categories in this chapter. [71].

VI. CONCLUSIONS AND RECOMMENDATIONS

This paper presents a mathematically rigorous analytical method to design multi-band filters with arbitrary numbers of bands, each having an arbitrary bandwidth, without any approximations or optimization. Using a reactance function as mapping function, a multi-band topology is constructed by simply replacing each reactive element of a low-pass prototype filter with a multi-band filter of which each band is a band of a low-pass filter. While some of the original low-pass filter. The technique can be applied to any low-pass topology, and for any number of bands. Various ladder-type and coupled-resonator examples are shown, and a twelfth-order, three-band L-band combline filter using square coaxial

low-pass ladder network with transmission zeros, and frequency filter which are well spaced in small graphs. This should be noted that this is not a trivial process due to the extent of the capabilities of the technology. First of these is the accuracy of the design process. A fourth-order low-pass filter with a bandwidth of 2%, and combinations of very spaced closely and widely. Resonators included LC-pairs, TEM transmission lines, and waveguide structures. The procedure gives exact results for loss-less structures, using CST.

However, a number of important issues have to be considered when the designs have to be implemented in a real-world technology. First of these is the accuracy of the design process. A fourth-order low-pass filter with a bandwidth of 2%, and combinations of very spaced closely and widely. Resonators included LC-pairs, TEM transmission lines, and waveguide structures. The procedure gives exact results for loss-less structures, using CST.

VI. CONCLUSIONS AND RECOMMENDATIONS
This paper presents a mathematically rigorous analytical method to design multi-band filters with arbitrary numbers of bands, each having an arbitrary bandwidth, without any approximations or optimization. Using a reactance function as mapping function, a multi-band topology is constructed by simply replacing each reactive element of a low-pass prototype filter with a multi-band filter of which each band is a band of a low-pass filter. While some of the original low-pass filter. The technique can be applied to any low-pass topology, and for any number of bands. Various ladder-type and coupled-resonator examples are shown, and a twelfth-order, three-band L-band combline filter using square coaxial

low-pass ladder network with transmission zeros, and frequency filter which are well spaced in small graphs. This should be noted that this is not a trivial process due to the extent of the capabilities of the technology. First of these is the accuracy of the design process. A fourth-order low-pass filter with a bandwidth of 2%, and combinations of very spaced closely and widely. Resonators included LC-pairs, TEM transmission lines, and waveguide structures. The procedure gives exact results for loss-less structures, using CST.

Fig. 3.86
frequency
mechanism
high insertion

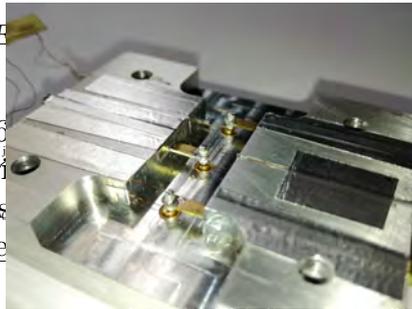


Fig. 2: Third Order Evanescent Mode Waveguide Filter Equivalent Circuit
Fig. 4: Manufactured 3rd Order E-mode Waveguide

to inductance, added by fixed structures, i.e. the tuning screws, the biasing wires and the ground plane. For the full wave simulation, the resistance was altered from $10\ \Omega$ to $3\ \Omega$, and the capacitance from $0.61\ \text{pF}$ to $0.18\ \text{pF}$ as the biasing voltage is increased from $0\ \text{V}$ to $20\ \text{V}$, which are realistic values when referring to the data sheet of the component.

In comparison with other recently published works such as presented in [6] for a much lower frequency, the presented evanescent mode filter achieves a wider tuning range at the cost of higher insertion loss at the lower extreme. Compared to the two pole waveguide iris filter presented in [4], the presented filter achieved a smaller insertion loss presented in [4], which is expected considering the use of MEMS switches versus discrete tuning provided by the MEMS switches. The insertion loss presented in [4] is higher than the presented filter, which is expected considering the use of MEMS switches versus regular waveguide. The overall size of the iris filter is approximately $(15.8\ \text{mm} \times 7.9\ \text{mm} \times 32.4\ \text{mm})$, not including the feed. In comparison to the presented filter, the smaller width and height dimensions are due to the higher frequency of operation, but the length is smaller for the evanescent mode filter.

Figure 3.87
mode filter (from [6])

A second interesting filter is a wire-cut combline filter, heavily enhanced by square resonators, and inserted between the resonators into cut-outs in the roof of the filter housing, as shown in the exploded assembly drawing in Fig. 3.88. The wire-cut manufacturing process is

to inductance added by fixed structures, i.e. the tuning screws, the biasing wires and the ground plane. For the full wave simulation, the resistance was altered from $10\ \Omega$ to $3\ \Omega$ and the capacitance from $0.61\ \text{pF}$ to $0.18\ \text{pF}$ as the biasing voltage is increased from $0\ \text{V}$ to $20\ \text{V}$, which are realistic values when referring to the data sheet of the component.

In comparison with other recently published works such as presented in [6] for a much lower frequency, the presented evanescent mode filter achieves a wider tuning range at the cost of higher insertion loss at the lower extreme. Compared to the two pole waveguide iris filter presented in [4], the presented filter achieved a smaller insertion loss presented in [4], which is expected considering the use of MEMS switches versus discrete tuning provided by the MEMS switches. The insertion loss presented in [4] is higher than the presented filter, which is expected considering the use of MEMS switches versus regular waveguide.

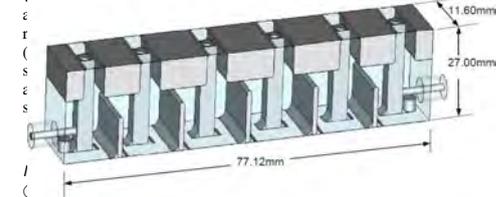


Fig. 2. Modified Combline Structure

Figure 3.87. Miniaturised combline filter structure (from [73])

the resonators and loading it with end-capacitances. This is normally achieved by simply reducing the space between the housing and the ends of the resonators in Fig.1. However, for applications requiring very wide stop-bands, the line lengths have to be reduced by large fractions, and the end-gaps become so small that mechanical tolerances become a significant problem. For the filter presented here, the stop-band requirement called for resonators with electrical lengths of smaller than 40 degrees, resulting in end-gaps of smaller than $0.1\ \text{mm}$. To alleviate this problem, the end of each resonator is 'inserted' into a lowered roof, as shown in Fig 2. This allows for significant increases in end-capacitance without any of the gap dimensions becoming too small.

While obvious, it is nevertheless worth noting that the advantages of the proposed changes would be difficult to achieve when using cylindrical resonators, as the end-capacitances will be reduced significantly for equivalent gap dimensions. The use of square resonators also enables the manufacturing process of wire-cutting to be utilized to good effect, allowing the complete central part of the structure to be cut from one piece of metal. This is shown in Fig 5, and is highly advantageous, as very high accuracy of the critical dimensions can easily be achieved.

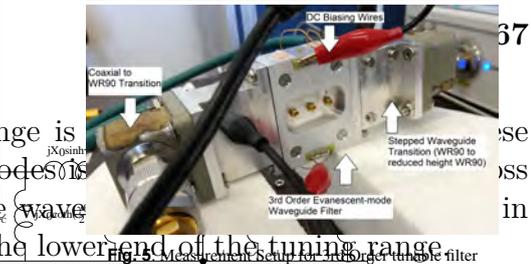


Fig. 3. Measurement Setup for 3rd Order Evanescent-mode Filter

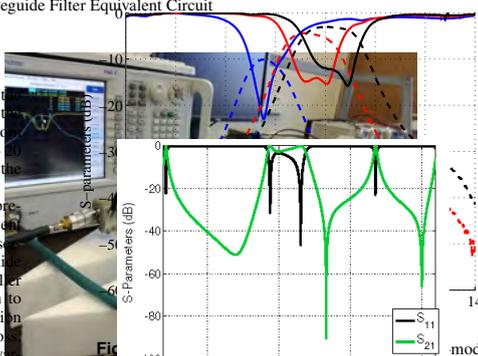


Figure 3.88: Miniaturised combline filter (from [73])

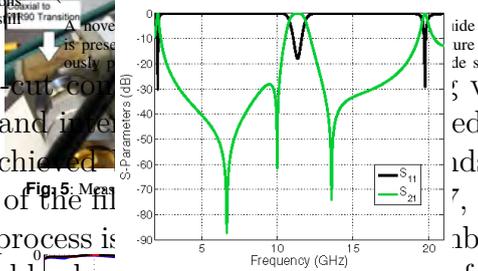


Figure 3.89: Miniaturised combline filter (from [73])

Case B: With M equal to the housing width (see Fig. 4(a)). Stop-band Response for Case B

A filter with central frequency of $2.55\ \text{GHz}$ and a bandwidth of $40\ \text{MHz}$ (1.6%) was constructed and measured. The filter was constructed using wire-cutting. The centre section was manufactured from one piece of metal. The resonator was inserted between the housing and the ends of the resonators in Fig. 3(a), as shown in Fig 3(a).

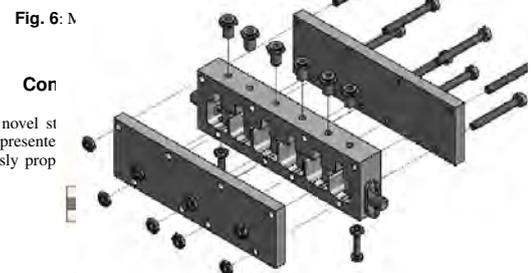


Fig. 5. Filter Construction

Figure 3.88: Miniaturised combline filter (from [73])

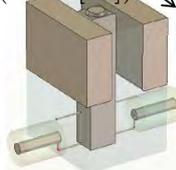


Fig. 3(b). Embedded Resonator Detail: Case B

For both cases, the resonator was coupled to input and output ports, and tuned to the same resonating frequency. Using CST Microwave Studio, wideband transmission responses were simulated, with the results shown in Figs. 4(a) and (b). The difference is quite marked. For Case A, the attenuation starts declining at frequencies just over $7\ \text{GHz}$ already, with the lower edge of a well-defined second pass-band occurring at $9.5\ \text{GHz}$. For Case B, the lower edge of the second pass-band only occurs at $11.3\ \text{GHz}$, an increase of

se
ss
in

The results are shown in Figs. 7 and 8. Due to the red region in the pass-band shown in Fig. 8. Due to the red region in the pass-band is fairly high, but $17\ \text{dB}$ is achieved over the band. This shows that an attenuation of better than $11\ \text{GHz}$, or $4.3\ \text{fa}$.

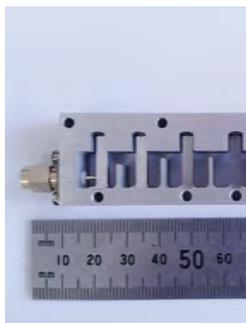


Fig. 6. Manufactured Filter

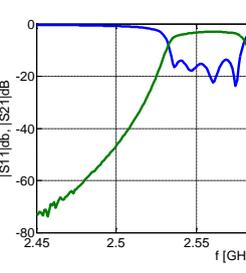


Fig. 7. Measured Pass-band Response for Case A

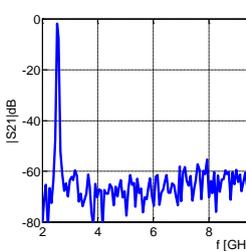


Fig. 8. Measured Stop-band Response for Case A

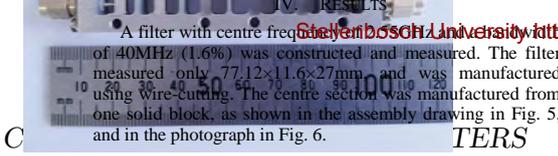
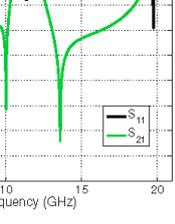


Fig. 6. Manufactured Filter

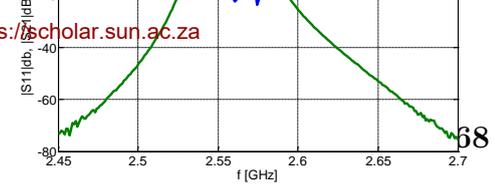


Fig. 7. Measured Pass-band Response

Response for Case B

RESULTS
 frequency of 2.55GHz and a bandwidth of 40MHz (1.6%) was constructed and measured. The filter measured only 77.12x11.6x27mm, and was manufactured using wire-cutting. The centre section was manufactured from one solid block, as shown in the assembly drawing in Fig. 5, and in the photograph in Fig. 6.

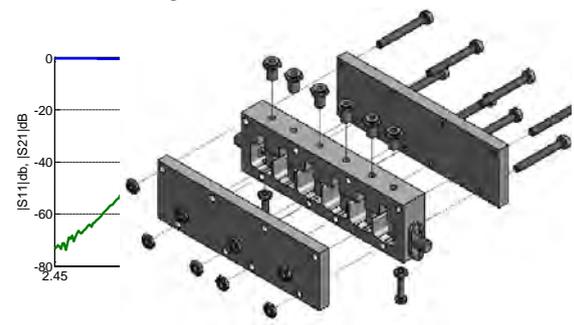


Figure 3.89: Miniaturised combline filter measurements (from [73])

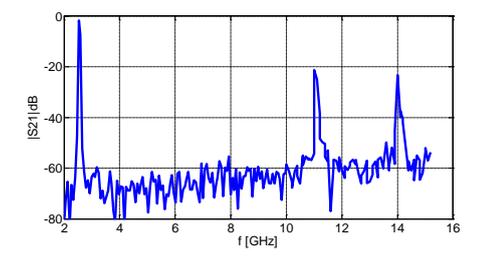
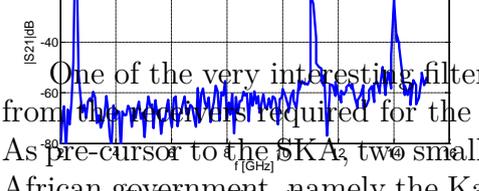


Fig. 8. Measured Wideband Response

Figure 3.90: Wideband measurements (from [73])

One of the very interesting filter requirements in the last decade, stemmed from the receivers required for the Square Kilometre Antenna (SKA) project. As pre-cursor to the SKA, two smaller projects were first launched by the South African government, namely the Karoo Array Telescope (KAT), a one-dish, L-band demonstrator, and KAT7, a seven-dish extension of KAT. For both, the receivers required extreme magnitude flatness over frequency. As the filters in the receive chains have the strongest influence of overall system amplitude flatness, the required filters demanded very flat magnitude responses, in addition to wide bandwidths. The first solution for KAT is shown graphically in Fig. 3.91, and consisted of a basic combline filter with cylindrical rods, but tuned for insertion loss flatness at the expense of return loss. The measured results are shown in Fig. 3.92 and Fig. 3.93, where a 0.1dB insertion loss flatness was achieved over the band. The negative on the return loss, inherent to this type of design, is also clearly visible.

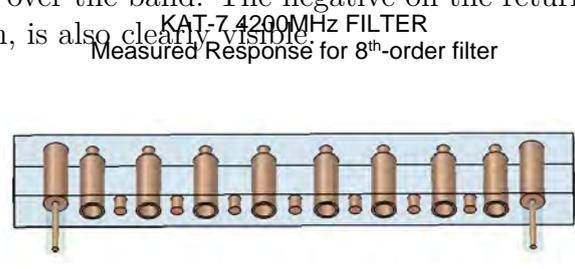
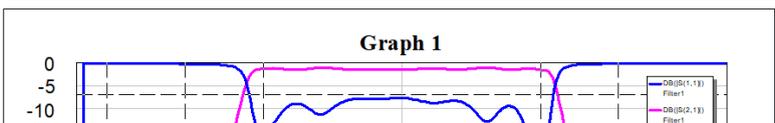
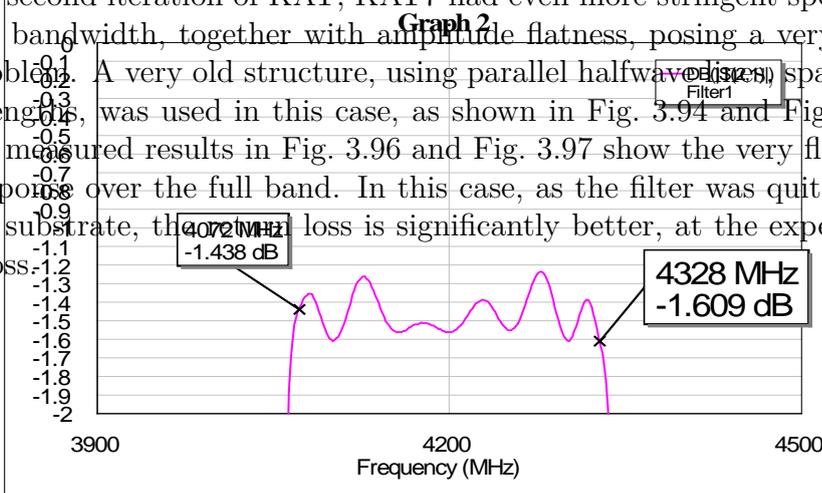


Figure 3.91: Combline filter for KAT receiver

Filter 1: Nickel Plated

For the second iteration of KAT, KAT7 had even more stringent specifications, with bandwidth, together with amplitude flatness, posing a very challenging problem. A very old structure, using parallel halfwavelength resonators spaced at half wavelength, was used in this case, as shown in Fig. 3.94 and Fig. 3.95. Again, the measured results in Fig. 3.96 and Fig. 3.97 show the very flat amplitude response over the full band. In this case, as the filter was quite lossy due to the substrate, the return loss is significantly better, at the expense of insertion loss.



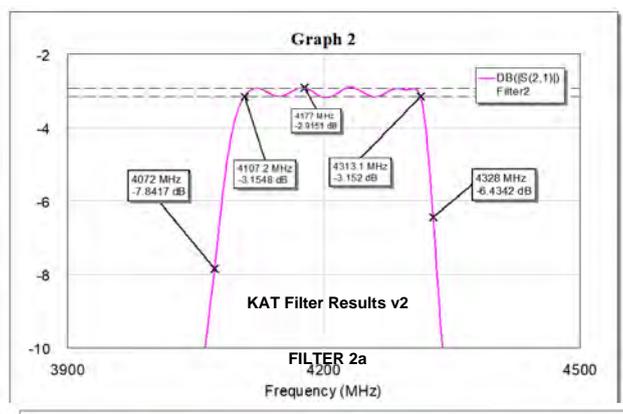
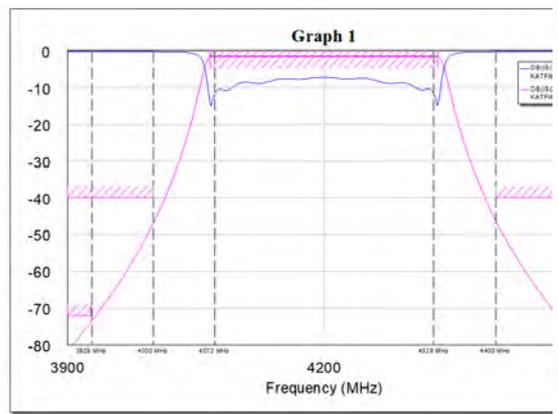


Figure 3.92: KAT combine filter measurements)



Figure 3.94: KAT7 filter photo-graph)

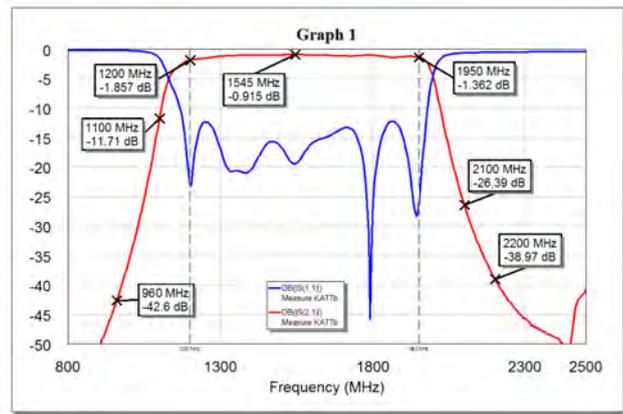


Figure 3.95: KAT7 filter layout

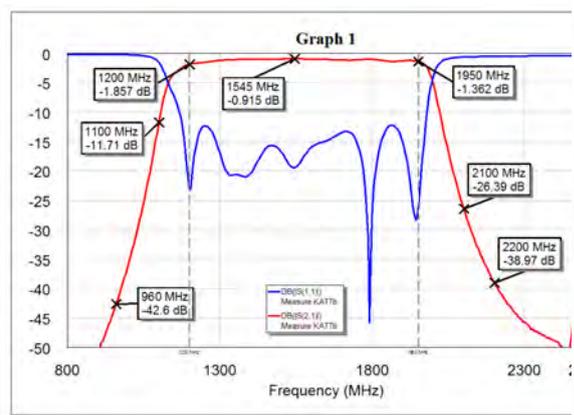


Figure 3.96: KAT7 combine filter measurements)

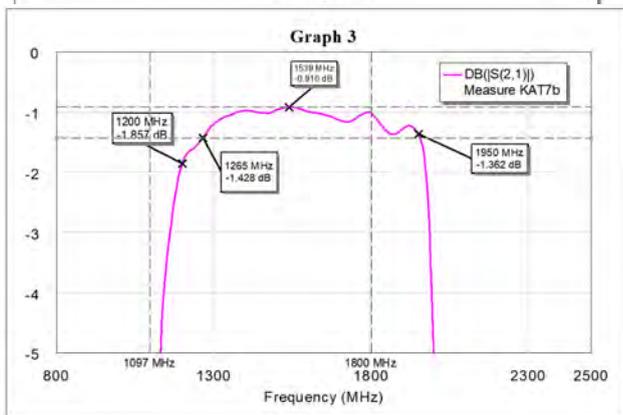
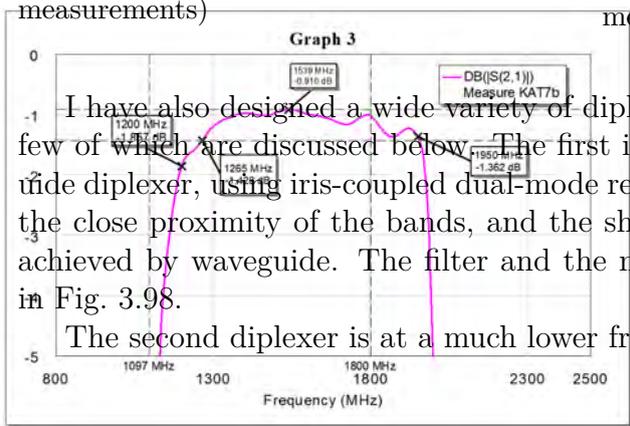


Figure 3.97: KAT7 filter measurements

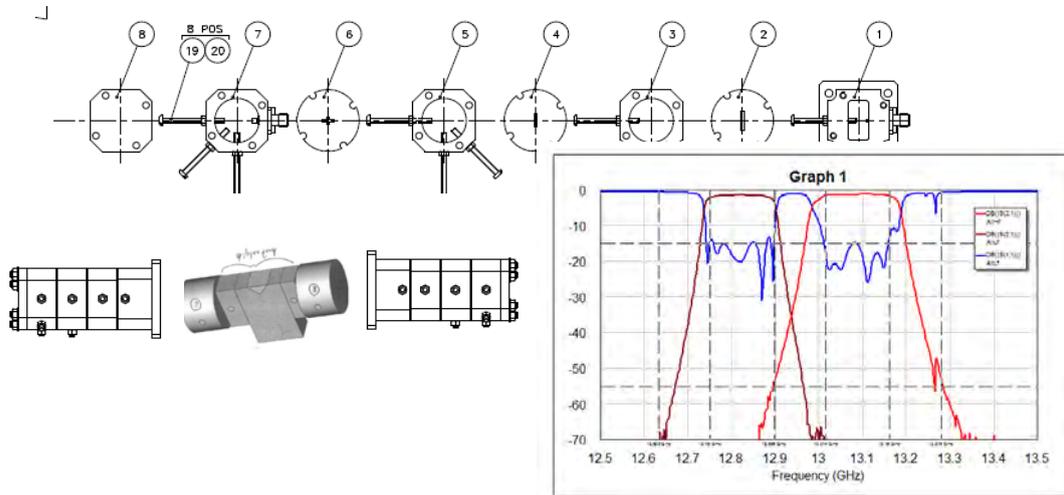
I have also designed a wide variety of duplexers for commercial purposes, a few of which are discussed below. The first is a dual-mode cylindrical waveguide diplexer, using iris-coupled dual-mode resonators. The challenge here was the close proximity of the bands, and the sharp roll-off, which could only be achieved by waveguide. The filter and the measured performance are shown in Fig. 3.98.

The second diplexer is at a much lower frequency, and was interesting due



Dual-Mode Waveguide Diplexers

13 GHz Dual-Mode Diplexer



Meyer 2007

Figure 3.98: Cylindrical waveguide diplexer

to the specific space envelope available, which called for a shallow and wide design. The resulting diplexer consisted of two combline filters lying in the same plane next to each other, and coupled to a central port through one half-wave input line. The input coupling is quite novel, as it exploits the mirror arrangement of the combline filters. The filter is shown diagrammatically in Fig. 3.99, with the measured results in Fig. 3.100 and Fig. 3.101. A zoomed-in measurement shows the good insertion loss characteristics of the filter.

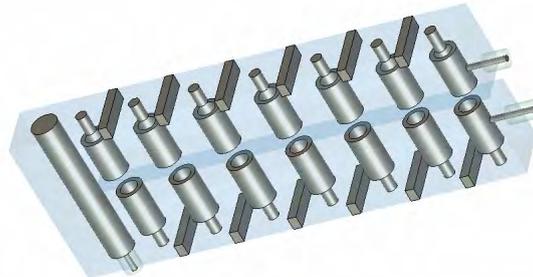
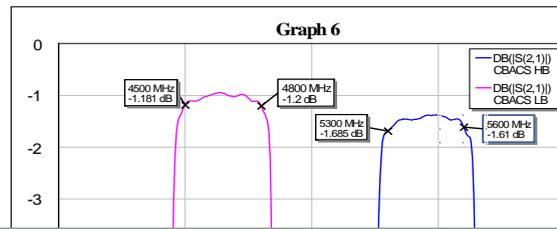
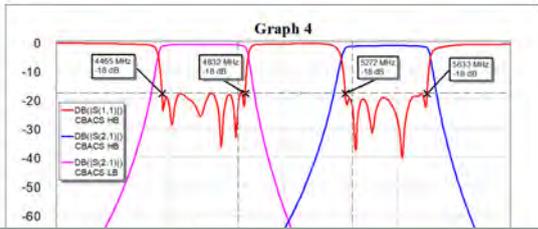
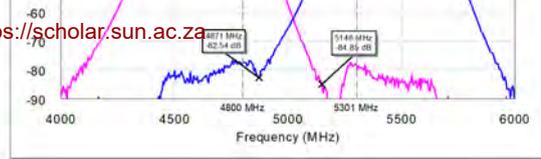


Figure 3.99: Combline diplexer

The final diplexer, and final filter in this chapter, represents the most challenging filter I have designed over my career. The filter consists of two 8th-order coaxial filters, each with three cross-couplings, which creates asymmetric transmission zeros on the high-band and low-band sides of the two filters respectively. The space envelope was extremely small, and the design pushes the

CBACS Diplexer Measurement

CHAPTER 3. MICROWAVE FILTERS
Measurement with light clamping on output ports



Coaxial Diplexer

4GHz Diplexer

2x 9th order with asymmetrical transmission zeros

Positive and Negative Triplets

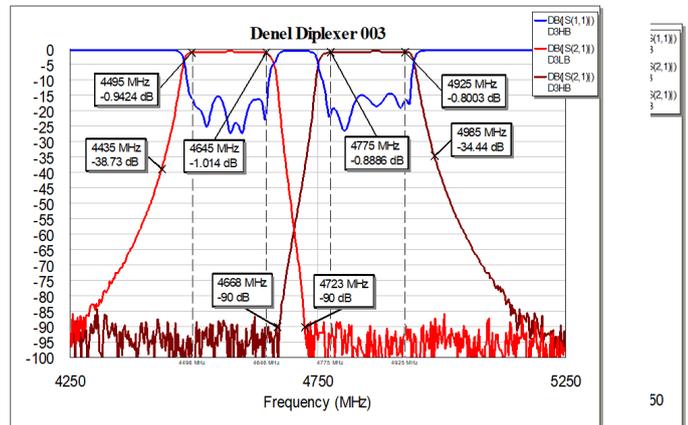


Figure 3.103: Coaxial diplexer measurements Mayer 2010

My commercial filter work involved me in the local industry in a way that no research activity could do. It exposed me to a variety of projects and systems, and allowed me to work closely with extremely talented engineers with decades of experience. It also showed me that some of the toughest research problems originate in industry. In terms of technical aspects, whereas a research project needs only present proofs-of-concept, commercial prototypes need to work exactly to specifications. This is a significant difference, and has often exposed a lack of understanding of the subtleties or fundamentals of a particular piece of theory in my armoury of knowledge.

3.9 Conclusion

Microwave filters have been, and currently still are, one of the main pillars of my professional career, in terms of both research and industrial involvement. The combination of requirements on structural and electrical design, electromagnetic analysis, modelling, and optimisation, created numerous opportunities for innovation over the years. The explosion in personal communications over the last decade has increased the pressure on the available spectrum by orders of magnitude, making the role of filters more and more important. With the 5G-standard set to dominate communications for the next decade, the need for filters will increase even more. In addition, integration of antennas, amplifiers and filters is set to become one of the most important system requirements, calling for new design techniques and new measurement techniques. Massive integration will also in all likelihood more and more require non-traditional design and manufacturing techniques.

Due to our long history of development in this field, my group has established itself as the primary filter group in South Africa, with virtually all the filter designers in local industry being graduates from the group. Internationally, the group is involved with a number of other groups, and international companies. My activity on filters is therefore set to continue into the next decade, and in all likelihood until the end of my career.

Chapter 4

Passive Devices

4.1 Introduction

In terms of passive devices, microwave systems not only require filters, but a large variety of different signal control devices, such as switches, power dividers and combiners, couplers, matching networks and transitions between guiding structures. My work has included a number of these over the years, mostly as a result of requirements by the local Radar industry.

4.2 Matching networks

So-called *finline* structures became very popular in the 1990's as a way of inserting lumped components into waveguide. A typical single-sided finline is effectively a slotline on a substrate, which is inserted in the E-plane of a waveguide. As the substrate is typically quite thin, a very low-loss structure is obtained, but with the ability to add components across the slot.

For general applications, the use of finlines normally requires transitions between empty waveguide and the finline. As with normal planar structures, both stepped quarter-wave sections and smoothly tapered sections work well for finline. However, in waveguide these structures can become quite long. A classical exponentially tapered finline transition, also showing a stepped section created by cutting out a quarter-wave section of the substrate at the interface with the empty waveguide, is shown in Fig. 4.1.

I started work on the problem of finding optimal finline taper profiles in 1998 with the help of a Master's degree student, Mr JC Kruger (who qualified as a clinical psychologist after completion of his Master's degree, and is currently a practising professional psychologist). In this work, simple tapers such as exponential, linear, single circular arc and double circular arc tapers were experimentally investigated [74], [75]. This formed the starting point of work by myself and a student who was at that stage only an undergraduate final year student, Dr Chris Vale. The aim was to find an optimisation procedure

Designing High-Performance Finline Tapers with Vector-Based Optimization

Christopher A. W. Vale, Steven M. Lee, Eric and Pierre Meyer, and Marnie O'Neil

... a novel two-step optimization algorithm for the design of high-performance finline tapers. The design utilizes a focusing approach, where the number of variables increases with an increasing number of variables. The optimization exploits the vector representation of the reflection coefficient of smoothly varying finline tapers are designed and measured only $0.47\lambda_0$ (17.5 mm) at a bandwidth of 7.4–11.3 GHz, and without a quarter-wave notch transformer, a bandwidth of 8.1–10.9 GHz.

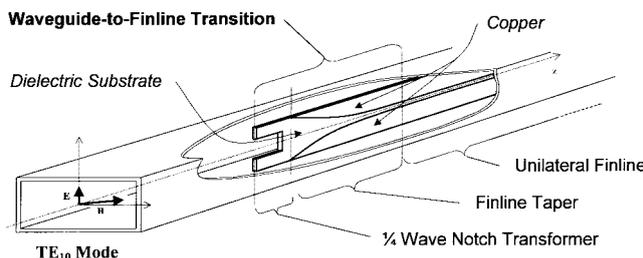


Fig. 1. Typical finline taper.

Figure 4.1: Waveguide to finline transition (from [76])

This paper presents a novel two-step optimization algorithm for the design of finline tapers. The first step relies on a systematic increase of variables, similar to the method used by Kozak *et al.* [6], while the second step exploits the vector nature of the integral formulation of the reflection coefficient of smoothly varying tapers, as derived by Collin [7]. The algorithm is evaluated with respect to convergence and sensitivity to starting values, and are shown to be robust and to display stable minimization behavior for any number of variables. As examples, four X-band tapers are shown with their measured results: two very short tapers of $0.47\lambda_0$ and $0.67\lambda_0$ at 8 GHz (17.5 and 25 mm, respectively), and two tapers illustrating how the air-dielectric interface of a frequency and the non-ideal behavior of the notch transformer, and one taper compensating for a straight air-dielectric interface. The latter still displays a reflection coefficient of better than 30 dB across the 8.1–10.9 GHz band, also appearing to reduce the longest one during one iteration. This process is illustrated in Fig. 4.3.

The proposed optimization process progressively more variables, the so-called taper shaping defined as the interpolation between an arbitrary number of variable gap width values, spaced equally along the length of the taper. The more variables chosen to describe the taper shape, the more minimum for a set number of variables is reached, the number of variables, and the complexity of the taper is increased. This is illustrated in Fig. 4.2.

The process is very quickly, the only preliminary results for this purpose of this paper, the standard formula for the reflection coefficient of smoothly varying tapers [7], shown in (1), is used with ρ , the reflection coefficient, Z_0 and β , the characteristic impedance and propagation constant, respectively, z , the length of the taper, l , the taper half wavelength length, and ω the frequency in radians per second

$$\rho(\omega) = \frac{1}{2} \int_0^l \frac{\partial}{\partial z} [\ln [Z_0(z, \omega)]] \cdot e^{-2j \int_0^z \beta(\zeta, \omega) d\zeta} dz. \quad (1)$$

II. TWO-STEP OPTIMIZATION PROCEDURE

With each variable, the widths in the line are calculated from spline interpolations between the points. Once a minimum for a set number of variables is reached, the number of variables, and the complexity of the taper is increased. This is illustrated in Fig. 4.2.

For significantly shorter tapers, the standard formula for the reflection coefficient of smoothly varying tapers [7], shown in (1), is used with ρ , the reflection coefficient, Z_0 and β , the characteristic impedance and propagation constant, respectively, z , the length of the taper, l , the taper half wavelength length, and ω the frequency in radians per second

$$\rho(\omega) = \frac{1}{2} \int_0^l \frac{\partial}{\partial z} [\ln [Z_0(z, \omega)]] \cdot e^{-2j \int_0^z \beta(\zeta, \omega) d\zeta} dz. \quad (1)$$

Manuscript received June 26, 1999; revised July 12, 1999. This work was supported by the Department of Electronic Engineering, Stellenbosch University, Stellenbosch 7600, South Africa (e-mail: caw@sun.ac.za).
 0018-9480(99)08443-4.

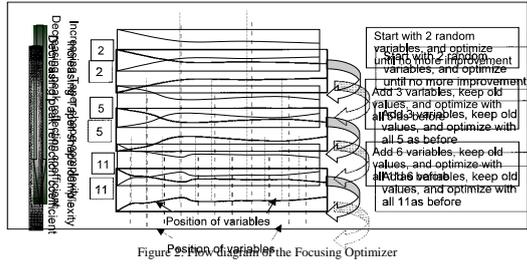


Figure 4.2: Focusing optimizer (from [76])

The integral is evaluated numerically using a high level of discretization to ensure accurate results. For increased speed, the impedance and propagation constant values are read from data tables, such data tables can be computed either by using approximate formulas [8]–[11] or accurate two-dimensional (2-D) FEM analysis. The proviso that the taper should be smooth for this formula to hold [7] is achieved by the use of cubic interpolation to construct the taper profile from the variables.

For the optimization approach, the error function to be minimized is defined as the peak reflection coefficient in the band of interest. This particular definition causes severe problems for standard optimization techniques. In addition to the stochastic behavior of the error function caused by the non-linear formulation, a host of local minima results from the large number of variables used to describe the tapers. Unfortunately, a good taper must have a large freedom of

Figure 7. Measured reflection coefficient for a large number of variables. The solution to this problem is two new optimization techniques: the focusing and vector representation (VR) techniques for a 25mm taper (from [76])

A. Focusing Optimizer

This work represented some of the first work on structural optimization in microwave planar design, which allowed for continuously variable random problems using a wide range of one-way propagation over the entire frequency range. By starting an optimization with fewer variables the error landscape can be “de-focused,” leaving only the focus minima visible when the optimizer leads to a lower point on that out-of-focus landscape, the focus is improved and the optimizer is allowed to find the slightly more accurate minimum point. This process is repeated until the design is viewed with an acceptable resolution.

In the focusing algorithm, optimization is initially done with some free variables, thereby finding the optimum cross shape of the taper form. Retaining this shape, variables are added to the taper form in a branch-like fashion. All variables are then optimized again, updating and refining the rough shape until enough variables have been added to ensure a shape with enough freedom of form. The process is illustrated in Fig. 2.

4.3 Directional Couplers

The branch-like addition scheme of variables was found to work more efficiently than introducing variables one at a time in random positions, though both produced similar results.

In addition to work on flange tapers, Mr Kruger’s Master’s work also included work on waveguide directional couplers [75]. By accident, I had discovered previously that traditional Bethe-hole couplers showed enormous improvements in coupling bandwidth when the waveguide roof was lowered. Mr Kruger investigated this in detail, using the classical Moreno crossed-slot, crossed guide

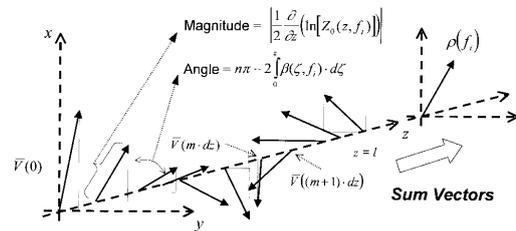


Fig. 3. Vector diagram illustrating the VR optimizer.

Figure 4.3: VR optimizer (from [76])

B. The VR Optimizer

For lossless systems (β real), the integrand term in (1) can be expressed in vector form as

$$\vec{V}(z, \omega) = M e^{j(\theta + n\pi)} \quad (2)$$

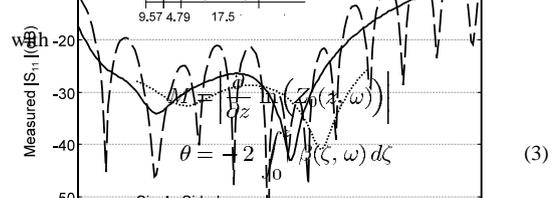


Figure 9. Measured reflection coefficient for a 17.5mm taper

At the frequency where maximum magnitude of the reflection coefficient occurs, the optimizer based on the vector representation finds the vector of vectors along the taper results for a 17.5mm taper (from [76])

Figure 4.5: Timing taper measured results for a 17.5mm taper (from [76])

The vector representation of the reflection coefficient at any frequency can, therefore, be seen as the summation of a number of these vectors along the length of the taper, as shown in Fig. 3.

While the vector magnitude is not directly a physical variable quantity, there is a direct correspondence between it and the exploitation of mathematical derivative term or magnitude of the vector can, therefore, be reduced or increased by reducing or increasing the derivative of the width profile. Varying the magnitude of solitary vectors in this way however creates rather abrupt changes in the width profile at the positions of the altered vectors, violating manufacturing tolerances and degrading performance at other frequencies markedly. This can be overcome by spreading the changes in vector magnitude over a sinusoidal curve. The formula for calculating the new width profile is shown in (4)

$$w(z)_{\text{new}} = \int_0^{\ell} \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial z} w(z)_{\text{old}} - k_{\text{red}} R \cdot \cos [\theta_V(z, \omega_i) - \theta_P(\omega_i)] + C \right) dz + w(0)_{\text{old}} \quad (4)$$

Directional couplers [1, 2] are finding increased usage in the design of dividers/combiners for distributed power amplifiers [3, 4, 5]. Waveguide couplers seem particularly attractive due to their low losses [6]. Unfortunately, these dividers utilize coupling values up to -3dB. The difficulties associated with coupling values this high are evident from many of the referenced papers. In general, tight coupling is only achieved by the use of multi-aperture couplers.

A basic waveguide coupler consists of two waveguides joined by a mutual aperture, for instance a hole in the common broad wall. The most popular types are inline broadwall couplers, able to achieve coupling over large bandwidths. However, they are very bulky because of the large numbers of apertures needed. The crossed-guide coupler shown in figure 1 offers very compact size but smaller coupling values. Most couplers use crossed slots as coupling apertures due to the improved directivity [7].

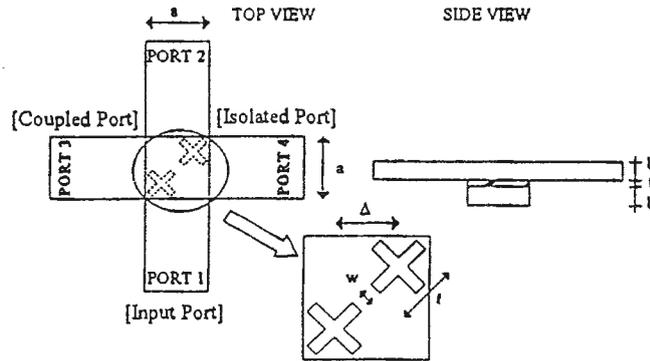


Figure 4.6: Moreno crossed-slot directional coupler (from [78])
Figure 1: Crossed-Guide Coupler with Dimensions

Design data on waveguide crossed-guide couplers is readily available for coupling values of up to -15dB [8, 9, 10 and various engineering handbooks]. For higher values, no data exists in standard literature. Only one author describes a way of obtaining tighter coupling by lowering the waveguide roof [11]. Unfortunately, he does not supply any design graphs, only a single example.

This paper will show how tight coupling can be achieved for crossed-guide couplers by using reduced-height waveguide. A large improvement in bandwidth, hinted at by Gerlack [11] is also illustrated. Finite element analyses are used to investigate the dependence of the S parameters on the different dimensions. The data presented here clearly defines the limits of operation for these couplers and constitutes valuable information for design engineers, as the characteristics of these reduced-height couplers are not available in standard literature.

2. Characteristics of Crossed-Guide Couplers

Most existing data on crossed-guide waveguide couplers is based off the analytical Bethe approach [7]. As the coupling can vary quite considerably and unexpectedly with frequency, and effects of resonance or coupling between slots can exist, this type of analysis is frequently inaccurate, and numerical analysis techniques have to be used. Rengarajan [12,13], for instance, presents an analysis of resonant slot coupling, but no analyses are available for directional couplers. A Finite Element (FEM) technique (Maxwell Eminence from Ansoft) was used for this paper to accurately investigate the characteristics of these couplers.

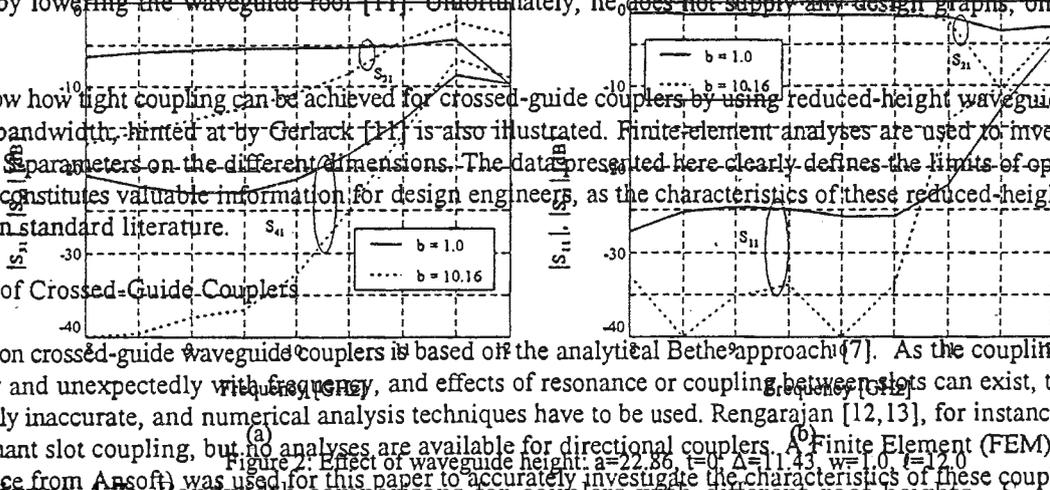


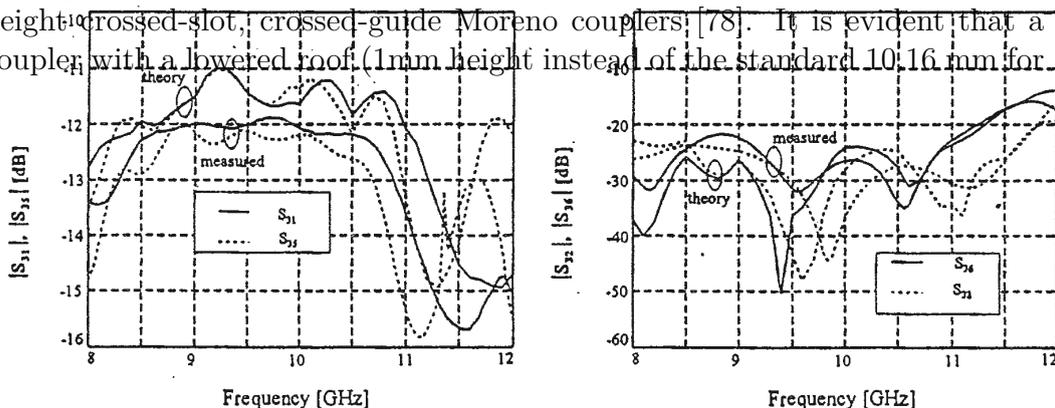
Figure 2: Effect of waveguide height: a=22.86, t=0, Δ=11.43, w=1.0, b=17.0

Figure 4.7: Bandwidth comparisons for couplers with different roof heights. S11 is the reflection coefficient through the coupled port, S21 is the coupling coefficient to the isolated port, and S31 is the reflection coefficient at the input port. The coupling value at 9 GHz is approximately -7dB higher for the reduced height case. A number of interesting properties in addition to the coupling value at 9 GHz are approximately 7dB higher for the reduced height case. It is shown in figure 4.7 that an increase in coupling for regular increase in reflection and a reduction in directivity. Other properties to be discussed in paper are the effects of slot length, cross separation and wall thickness.

3. A Prototype Coupler - Analysis and Measurements

What was singularly problematic of this software, was that no delete function was available in the drawing interface, which meant any mistake or change in the coupler had to be done from the complete structure!

Fig. 4.7 shows the simulated S-parameters for full-height and reduced-height crossed-slot, crossed-guide Moreno couplers [78]. It is evident that a coupler with a lowered roof (1mm height instead of the standard 10.16 mm for



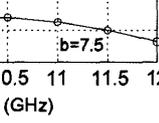


Figure 6: Crossed-guide coupler showing quarter-wave coupling slots.

PLERS

couplers is shown in... into 4-section... each port to create... side to the reduced... of 1mm was chosen... between guides is... of 0.1mm thickness... this structure has the... which are easy and... even for stringent... carried out using a... with a TRL full-

re shown in figures... h case representing... d line the measured... e transformers, S₁₁... aningless.

couplers have been... f 5±0.5dB across a... s a 30% bandwidth... en simulated and... gn graphs to within

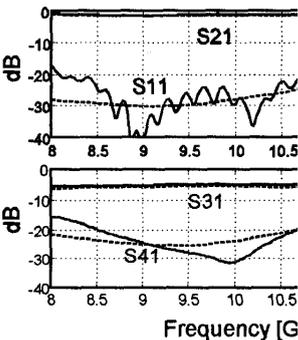
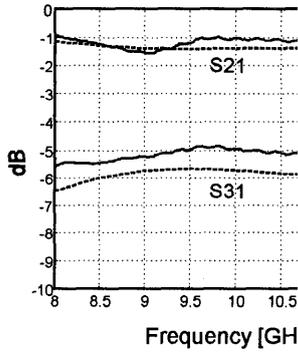


Figure 7: Results for prototype 1, measured results for $\Delta=11.43, w=2.0, t=0.1, l=12.0$ [79] — = measured - - - = predicted

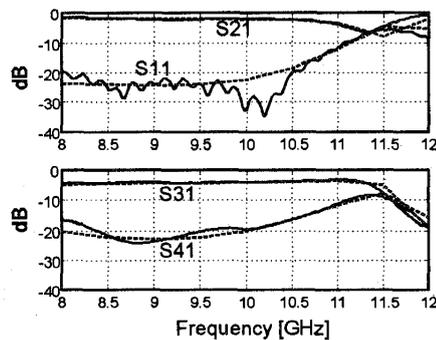
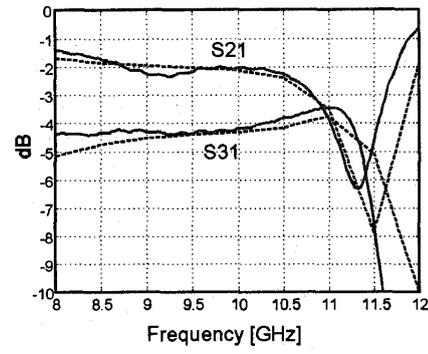


Figure 8: Results for prototype 2, measured results for $\Delta=11.43, w=2.0, t=0.1, l=12.0$ [79] — = measured - - - = predicted

255

X-band guide) creates a coupler with almost constant coupling over a 8-11.5 GHz band. (Note the coarse frequency interval of 0.5GHz - this was the first interval for an analysis to fit into half a day.) A large set of experimental structures was constructed and tested, and measurements performed on two prototype couplers. Both coupling and bandwidth are increased dramatically with a decrease in waveguide height. Disadvantages include reduced directivity and, more importantly, reduced power handling capability and increased transmission loss. Applications where small size, wide bandwidth and tight coupling are required, however, the advantages outweigh the variations.

This work was later extended to a full 10-way chain power divider for a local company. While it showed excellent coupling bandwidth, the losses were substantially higher than for normal height guide, which reduced the application of the principle substantially, especially for cascade couplers such as the chain divider. Nevertheless, it proved a valuable training ground for careful design of measurement experiments, and a first taste of commercial numerical electromagnetic analysis software.

CONCLUSIONS

The full advantages of using reduced-height waveguide for crossed-guide directional couplers are illustrated for the first time in this paper, using both FEM analysis and measurements performed at the 1998 IEEE MTS conference [79].

disadvantages by a la

RE

[1]: WE Caswell, *IEEE Trans. Techniques*, SB Cohn, R Passive Com to Direction on Microwave MTT-32, no 1055.
 [2]: M Faulkner, PHEMT Po Chain Comb Symposium, G Ferrel, L Sacks, 'A H Amplifier Techniques' Symposium.
 [3]: J Gipprich, Compact 8- Network Combining v Efficiency', Symposium.
 [4]: M Knox, R Voigt, P Br '400W X-Ba 1995 IEEE pp. 1605-1606.
 [5]: RE Collin, *Second Editi* 523.
 [6]: WAG Voss, *The Microw* 87.
 [7]: TN Anderson, *Nomograms'* 1959, pp. 34.
 [8]: M Surdin, *Physical Rev*
 [9]: RZ Gerlack, *IEEE Transa Techniques*,

256

The results of a three-level coupler with guides crossing on both top and undersides of the main guide, is shown in fig 4.10. Measurements and predicted responses include a coaxial to waveguide transition at each port. Port 3 is the input port, 4 and 5 the coupled ports, and ports 2 and 6 the isolated ports.

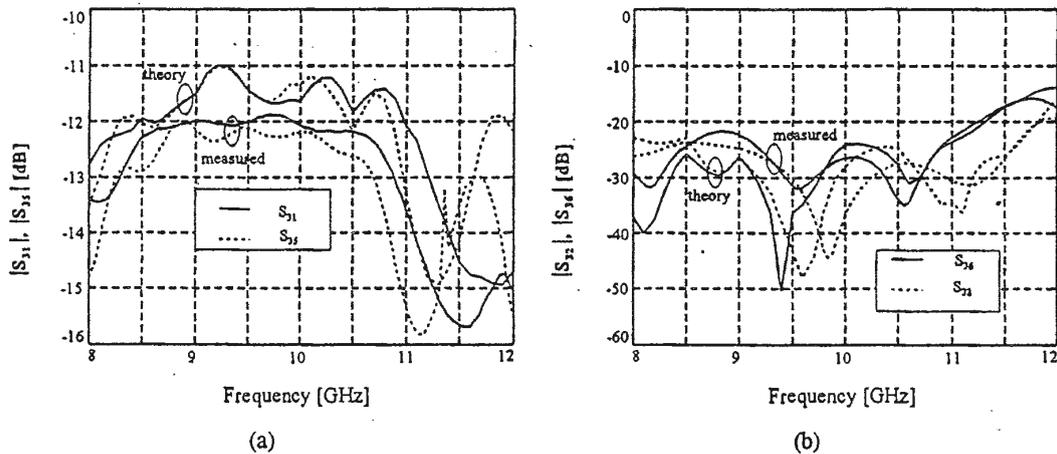


Figure 4.10: Three-layer crossed-slot measured results. Port 3 is the input port, 4 and 5 the coupled ports, and 2 and 6 the isolated ports. (from [78])
 It is clear that a wide-band coupler has been constructed with coupling value of 12 to 12.5 dB across a 2GHz bandwidth, to 13dB across 2.5GHz. The coupling is equivalent to a two-level coupler with a coupling value of 9dB and is only made possible by the use of the reduced height waveguides.

4.4 Power dividers and combiners

4. Conclusions

Pulsed search RADAR systems require the generation of short pulses of very high power on the order of a few kilowatts typically. Historically, this was achieved by the use of a few J-tube tubes. A prototype coupler showed good results and proved the validity of the FEM approach. Complete agreement is however impossible because of the complexity of the problem and the inability to model the entire travelling wave structure.

transition to the use of combined solid-state devices. This technology offered the very desirable characteristic of graceful degradation, as opposed to single point failure in TWT systems, but required low-loss combiners which could handle very high peak powers, and multiple inputs.

In 2005, myself and my PhD student Dr Dirk de Villiers started work on X-band combiners using a proposal by Prof PW van der Walt, a RADAR expert working in local industry, for a conical line combiner [80]. Conical line combiners look similar to radial combiners, but use conical lines instead of radial lines. While similar, the design and performance of conical line combiners are hugely different from radial combiners, as a conical line supports a TEM mode, with the line impedance defined by the angle between the two conductors. This offers a number of advantages, of which a wide spurious free frequency range, and the ability to use standard impedance matching techniques are the most important.

The first iteration of a ten-way conical line combiner was published in 2007 [81]. The basic structure of the combiner is shown in Fig. 4.11. Stepped impedance transformers were used on the input ports as well as the common output port - in the former case a very simple one using a cut-out of the dielectric surrounding the centre conductor of an extended dielectric SMA connector as shown in Fig. 4.12, and in the latter case a higher order stepped coaxial line as shown in Fig. 4.13. A cross-section of the final combiner is shown

CHAPTER 4. PASSIVE DEVICES

in Fig. 4.14.

DE VILLIERS *et al.*: DESIGN OF TEN-WAY CONICAL TRANSMISSION LINE POWER COMBINER

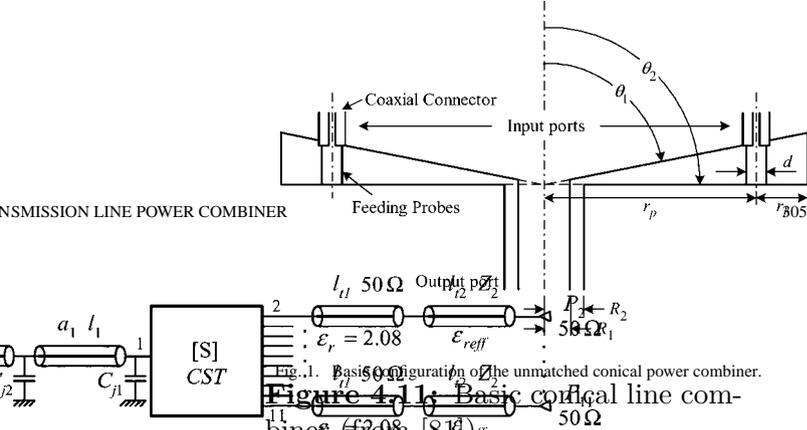


Fig. 1. Basic configuration of the unmatched conical power combiner. (From [81])

used in MWO. The S -parameter block was generated with a field simulation of the combining structure and

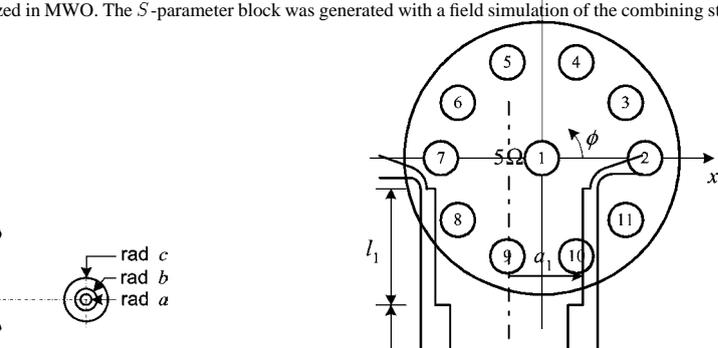


Fig. 2. Numbering of the ports of a ten-way combiner.

A 2-D cross section of the basic structure of the conical transmission line power combiner is shown in Fig. 1, and a sketch showing the port numbering is shown in Fig. 2.

The combiner consists of three sections, i.e.: 1) the central coaxial to conical transition; 2) the conical transmission line; and 3) the stepped impedance coaxial air line feeding the combining structure.

Figure 4.13: Conical combiner cross-section (from [81])

The combiner consists of three sections, i.e.: 1) the central coaxial to conical transition; 2) the conical transmission line; and 3) the stepped impedance coaxial air line feeding the combining structure. The central coaxial line has an air dielectric and inner and outer radii of R_1 and R_2 , respectively. The conical line is also air filled and is defined by the angles θ_1 and θ_2 . Probes that feed the input coaxial lines are placed at a distance r_p from the axis. A short circuit is placed in the conical line at a distance r_p from the center of the peripheral ports.

The desired mode within the combining structure is the dominant H_{10} mode. The propagation constant of this mode is $\beta = \sqrt{k_0^2 - \beta_{z0}^2}$. The N -type connection is also shown in this figure. The electric field has a θ -directed component only, and the magnetic field has a ϕ -directed component only.

The final values obtained for the parameters are $r_1 = 7.22$ mm, $l_1 = 2.08$ mm, $d = 0.2$ mm, $a_2 = 2.2$ mm, $a_1 = 2.2$ mm, $l_2 = 5.3$ mm, $l_1 = 2.08$ mm, and $\theta = 1.55$ rad.

The final values obtained for the parameters are $r_1 = 7.22$ mm, $l_1 = 2.08$ mm, $d = 0.2$ mm, $a_2 = 2.2$ mm, $a_1 = 2.2$ mm, $l_2 = 5.3$ mm, $l_1 = 2.08$ mm, and $\theta = 1.55$ rad.

IV. SUMMARY OF THE STEP-BY-STEP DESIGN PROCEDURE

The full design process can be summarized as follows.

- 1) The combining structure is designed and the exact response of the structure is determined with a full-wave solver.
 - a) Determine the impedance of the conical line from the number of ports as $Z_0 = 50/N$.
 - b) Construct the central transition between conical and coaxial lines, as described in [10], using $\theta_2 = 90^\circ$ and calculating θ_1 from (1).
 - c) Determine the radius r_p where the input ports are placed based on the width of the connectors, the spacing between the connectors, and the number of connectors used. Keep r_p as small as possible to reduce higher order modes.

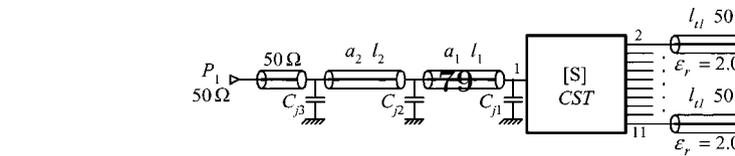


Fig. 7. Schematic representation of circuit to be optimized in MWO. The S -parameter block was generated with a field simulation of the combining structure and needs not be optimized.

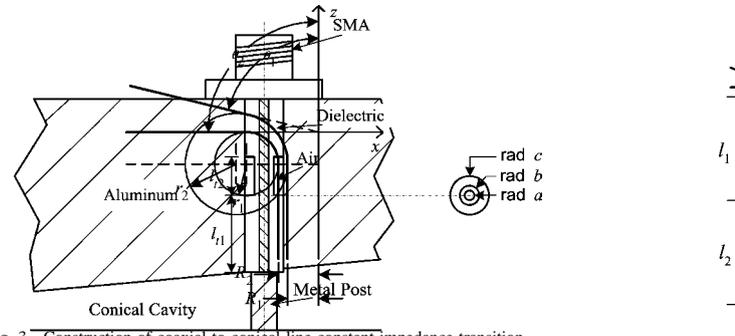


Fig. 3. Construction of coaxial-to-conical line constant impedance transition profile.

Fig. 8. Sketch of an extended dielectric SMA connector inserted into the top of the metal structure to form two short coaxial transmission lines.

Figure 4.12: Conical combiner input port details (from [81])

In an N -way combiner different impedances at the bottom of the impedance of the conical line must be realized. The SMA connector is placed on the conical line at a distance r_p from the center of the peripheral ports. The characteristic impedance of a conical transmission line operating in the TEM mode is found as [81]

$$Z_0 = \frac{60}{\sqrt{\epsilon_r}} \ln \frac{4a}{\pi d}$$

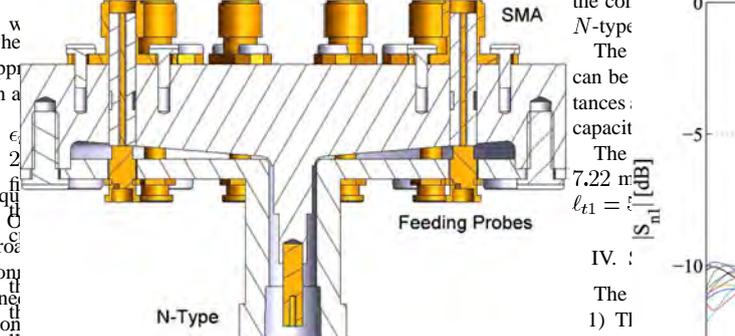


Fig. 9. Sketch of the stepped impedance coaxial air line feeding the combining structure.

varied from 50 to approximately 65 Ω in order not to completely and proof of the constant impedance characteristic of the profile. Figure 11 shows the side view of which will be taken insertion into the hole.

This transition produces very low reflections and has much higher peak power-handling capability than the simple transition (from [81]).

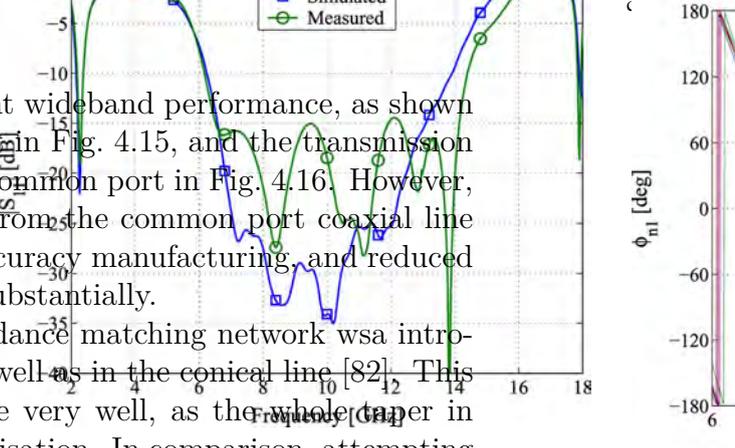


Fig. 11. Simulated and measured reflection coefficient at the central output port.

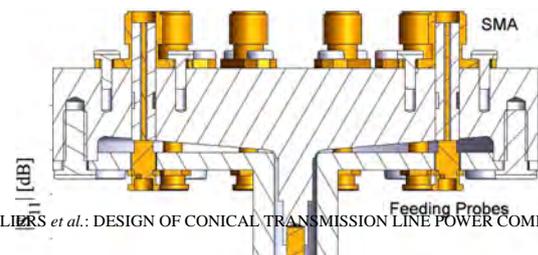
- d) Determine the diameter of the feeding probes. Wider probes give better bandwidth, but the diameter is limited by the outer diameter of the input feeding coaxial lines.
- e) Determine the length of the back-short r_b using a field simulation parameter sweep. (Optional: $\lambda/4$ can also be used for a slightly detuned performance.)
- f) Analyze the entire structure with a field solver to get the S -parameters at all the ports.

Fig. 12. Measured reflection coefficient $(S_{n1}, n = 1, \dots, 10)$ at the central output port.

simulated and measured reflection coefficient $(S_{n1}, n = 1, \dots, 10)$ at the central output port. The measured reflection coefficient is only 65 dB below the input power. The measured results are shown in Fig. 12.

CHAPTER 4. PASSIVE DEVICES

Fig. 10. 2-D side view of the conical combiner structure showing all connectors, feeding probes, and fastening screws.



DE VILLIERS *et al.*: DESIGN OF CONICAL TRANSMISSION LINE POWER COMBINERS USING TAPERED LINE MATCHING SECTIONS

DE VILLIERS *et al.*: DESIGN OF CONICAL TRANSMISSION LINE POWER COMBINERS USING TAPERED LINE MATCHING SECTIONS

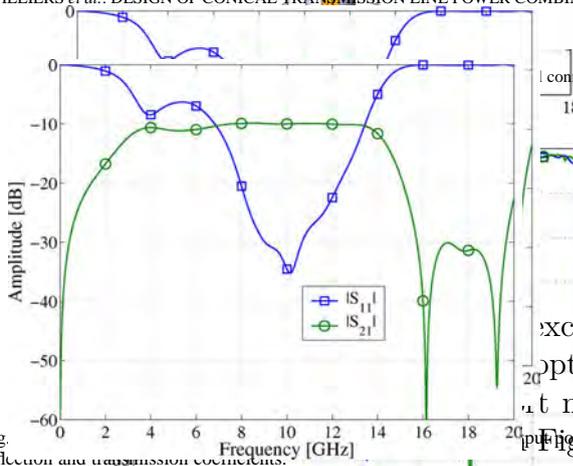


Fig. 5. Field simulation results of the combining structure central output port reflection and transmission coefficients.

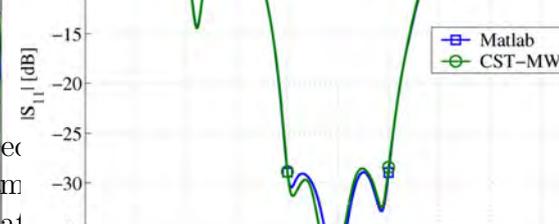
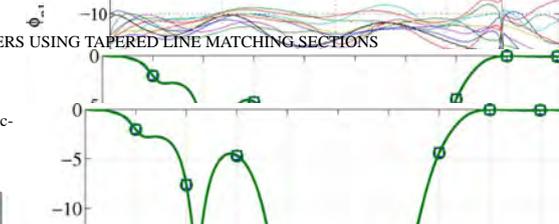
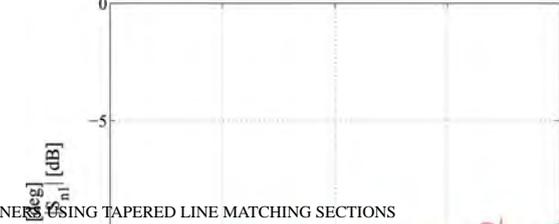
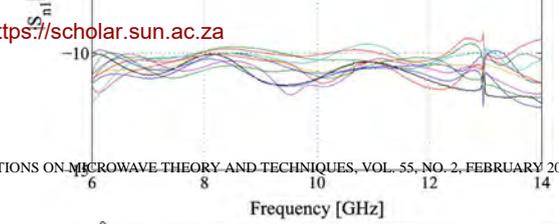


Fig. 7. Simulated reflection coefficient of a matched ten-way tapered line conical power combiner.

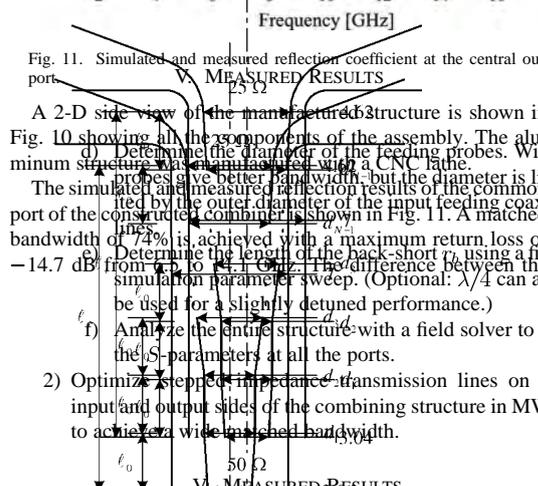


Fig. 6. 2-D side view of the manufactured structure.

Fig. 6. 2-D side view of the manufactured structure.

III. CENTRAL OUTPUT PORT MATCHING DESIGN

To match the 25 Ω conical combining structure to a 50 Ω N-type connector across the entire 8–12 GHz bandwidth, the measured results for the conical combiner are used. The measured results for the conical combiner are used. The measured results for the conical combiner are used.

The optimization process in MATLAB optimizes only the diameters d_n using a standard MATLAB function minimizer to yield a minimum S_{11} in the 8–12-GHz band. The length of

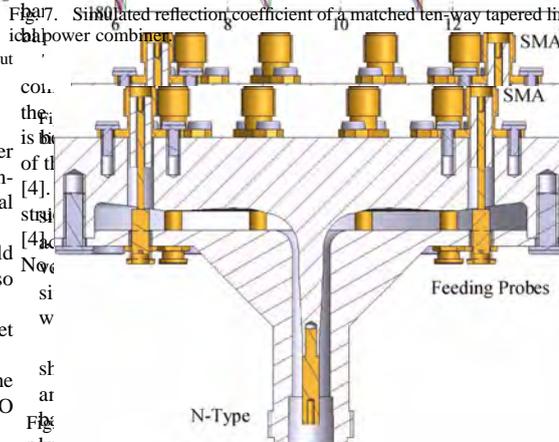


Fig. 8. The simulated and measured isolation characteristics of the conical combiner.

The reflection results for a five-section tapered line combiner are shown in Fig. 7. The reflection coefficient was obtained, and an optimization process was used to improve the reflection coefficient and the return loss. The optimization process was used to improve the reflection coefficient and the return loss.

The predicted reflection result from a CST-MWS simulation of the combiner structure is shown in Fig. 7, and is in very good agreement with the MATLAB prediction. The return loss is better than -38 dB across the 8–12 GHz band.

A 2-D section view of the entire manufactured aluminum structure with all the connectors, tuning posts, and fastening screws is shown in Fig. 8. The simulated and measured reflection results of the common port of the constructed combiner is shown in Fig. 9. A matched

reduction in the required manufacturing tolerances, and the increase in power handling capability.

1482 1482

IEEE TRANSACTIONS ON MICROWAVE THEORY AND TECHNIQUES, VOL. 56, NO. 6, JUNE 2008

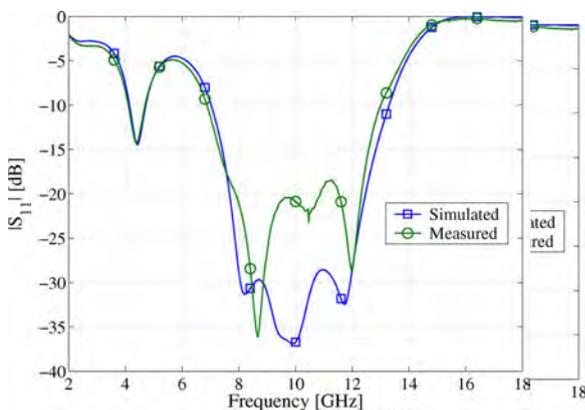


Fig. 9. Comparison between the simulated and measured reflection coefficient of a tapered line combiner.

Figure 4.19: Conical combiner measured S11 (from [82])

bandwidth of 47% is achieved with a maximum return loss of -18.5 dB from 7.7 to 12.4 GHz. This match is narrower and deeper than the previous design in [31], and is in much closer agreement to the simulated results. The measured response in the center of the band is due to the central coaxial line $\lambda/4$ type transition in the structure and the N -type SMA elements used in the measurement. These were not included in the simulation and typically have a reflection of around -20 dB.

The measured results in this case are shown in Fig. 10. The simulated structure is perfectly symmetrical. A maximum amplitude imbalance of ± 0.7 dB and a phase imbalance of $\pm 5^\circ$ is observed in the 8 – 12 GHz band.

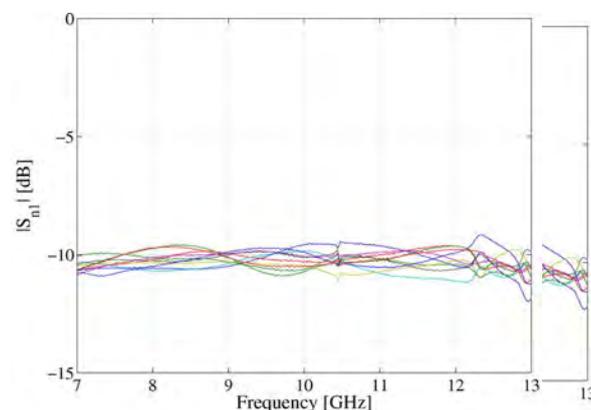
The simulated and measured field distributions of the tapered line combiner are shown in Fig. 11 where good agreement between the results is demonstrated.

Fig. 12 shows the total loss of the combiner. The maximum loss in the operating band is 0.28 dB and the average loss is only 0.18 dB. The loss includes the effects of the SMA transition from the tapered line to the SMA $\lambda/4$ type transition used in the measurement as well as an SMA $\lambda/4$ type transition used in the measurement setup. Again, the simulated loss is not included since the tapered structure is completely lossless.

in conical lines. A typical result for the electric field strength and peak power considerations is shown as an example of a tapered line combiner.

The peak power handling capability of transmission lines is usually limited by breakdown caused by high electric field strengths of the gas that fills the guide.

The simulated magnitudes of the E -fields, evaluated along a curve on the surface of the inner conductor of the central feed line from the central output port to one of the peripheral ports in the tapered line combiner developed here and the stepped impedance combiner in [33], are shown in Fig. 13 (note that the large length of the tapered line combiner is longer than that of the stepped impedance combiner). The E -field values are clearly shown to be much lower for the tapered line combiner than those of the stepped impedance combiner. There are no sharp peaks in the E -field, except in the vicinity of the corners at the peripheral ports. The E -field values



IEEE TRANSACTIONS ON MICROWAVE THEORY AND TECHNIQUES, VOL. 56, NO. 6, JUNE 2008

Figure 4.20: Conical combiner measured S11 (from [82])

line combiners can be performed for spurious responses requires knowledge of order modes which can exist in the

very difficult numerical task, and up to 2000 have been published. The basic theory of conical combiners had been published as, in

the field distributions of the higher order modes of a tapered line combiner with $n = 2, 3, 4, 5$. (a) Amplitude (b) Phase.

of the nonnegative integer order n of the conical combiner. The maximum loss in the operating band is 0.28 dB and the average loss is only 0.18 dB.

where it is however much lower than the field in the central part of the combiner. The peak power handling capacity of the tapered line combiner is approximately four times greater than that of the stepped impedance combiner for the same input power, and it can therefore be expected that the tapered line combiner has a four times greater peak power handling capability. Due to the uniformity of the field distribution in the vicinity of sharp corners, common to EM solvers, these results should only be used in a comparative rather than a quantitative sense.

As a consequence of the design of conical transmission line power combiners with highly predictable performance, the technique is general and may be applied to the design of similar microwave combiners.

By using simple quarter-wave length matching sections in the conical line, the impedance at the central port is raised, which allows for easier matching to the output combiner and hence more accurate construction. An optimized tapered line matching section is employed at the central output port to obtain wideband performance. The simulated peak power handling capability of the

As a consequence of the design of conical transmission line power combiners with highly predictable performance, the technique is general and may be applied to the design of similar microwave combiners.

By using simple quarter-wave length matching sections in the conical line, the impedance at the central port is raised, which allows for easier matching to the output combiner and hence more accurate construction. An optimized tapered line matching section is employed at the central output port to obtain wideband performance. The simulated peak power handling capability of the

Fig. 13 clearly shows much lower peak E -field values for the tapered line combiner than those of the stepped impedance combiner. There are no sharp peaks in the E -field, except in the vicinity of the corners at the peripheral ports. The E -field values

are clearly shown to be much lower for the tapered line combiner than those of the stepped impedance combiner. There are no sharp peaks in the E -field, except in the vicinity of the corners at the peripheral ports. The E -field values

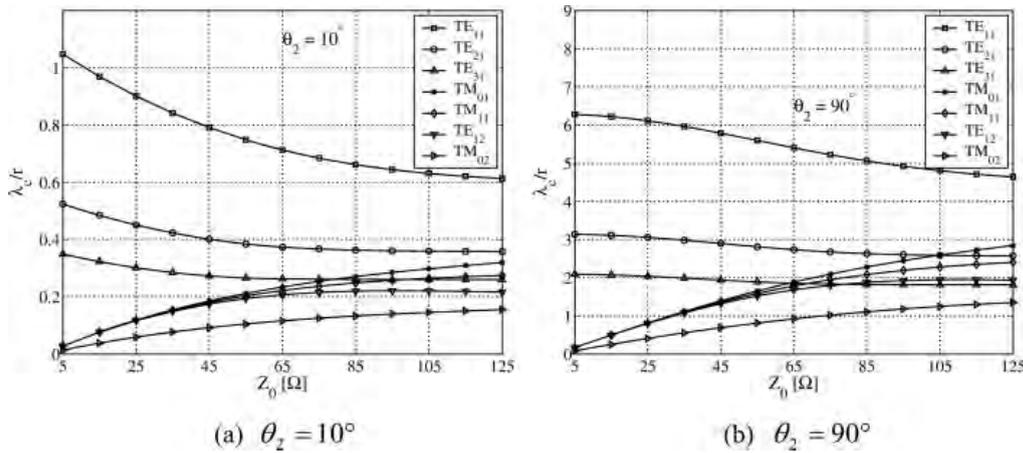


Figure 5. Normalized cutoff wavelength of higher order modes in a conical transmission line with θ_2 constant and θ_1 varied. Conical line cut-off frequencies (from [83])

The work on conical line combiners and dividers showed for the first time that the conical line, which had up to this point mostly been used as theoretical model for dipole antennas, could be used very effectively in power combiners. The TEM characteristic of these lines makes it possible to use standard impedance matching techniques and profiles, which is a significant advantage. In addition, the frequency spacing between the fundamental mode cut-off (at DC) and that of the first higher order modes is much larger than for radial lines. The work on the calculation of the higher order modes by Dr De Villiers represented a high point of numerical mathematical algorithms in my career, with reviewers of the paper specifically pointing out the absence of work of this nature in literature, and the high quality of the mathematical and numerical innovation.

The research on conical line combiners also continued after completion of the work reported here, and formed one of the key research areas of Dr de Villiers and his research students.

4.5 Microwave Switches

One of the key components in a pulsed RADAR system is a microwave switch which can control the signal from the antenna to the receiver input port. For high power search RADAR, such a switch should in its off-state have a very large isolation to protect the high power transmitted signal from leaking through to the sensitive receiver. In its on-state, the switch should show a very low loss, as this loss directly impacts the detection range. Finally, the structure should be able to protect against power levels of several kilowatt.

To satisfy all these conditions, most high-power switches make use of waveguide technology due to its low loss and high power capability. However, to

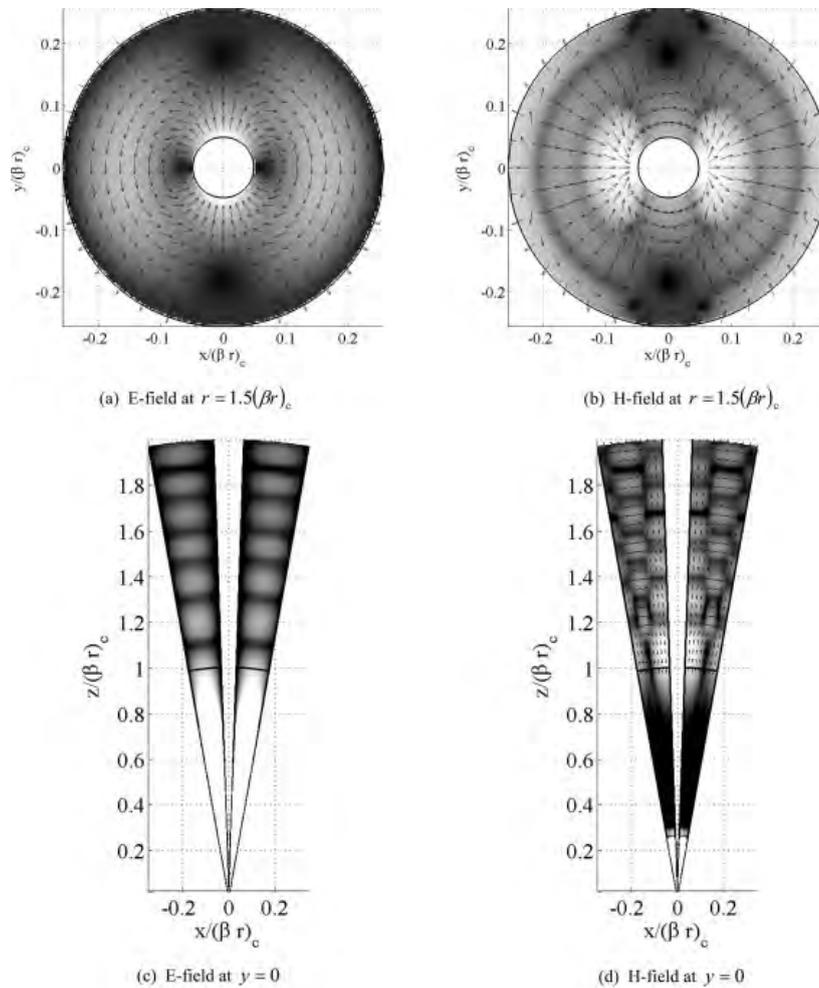


Figure 8. Normalized field patterns of the TE_{12} mode in a conical line with $\theta_2 = 10^\circ$ and $Z_0 = 100 \Omega$. **Figure 4.22: Conical line mode pattern (from [83])**

C. Higher Order Modal Cutoff Plots

In this subsection plots are shown of the normalized cutoff wavelength of some of the higher order modes in conical transmission lines. The geometries of the lines, together with myself and Prof. S. K. Sidel, together with myself and Prof. PW van der Walt, proposed a PIN-diode switching structure in evanescent mode waveguide [72], [85]. Evanescent mode waveguide offers the significant advantage of having excellent isolation characteristics, but is much more difficult to work with than a normal waveguide, as all the electrical parameters are strong non-linear functions of frequency.

The results in Figure 5 agree perfectly with those published in [3]. It can also be seen that for low impedance lines the TE_m modes dominate. Also note in Figure 4.23, with the ϕ directed equivalent circuit for the diodes in their off-state shown in Fig. 4.24. The mounting structure consists of two diodes mounted back-to-back on a thick, flat conductor which extends horizontally to the waveguide wall, where it is grounded. This plate is orthogonal to the electric field of the TE_{10} -mode, and therefore does not affect the

with small θ_2 . The dominance of the TE_{m1} modes for narrow lines will be explained by some modal field waveguide is difficult, as the signal simply leaks around typical obstacles. In 2005, my PhD student Dr Thomas

D. Modal Field Plots

Normalized field patterns for the TE_{11} and TE_{12} modes in a conical line with $\theta_2 = 10^\circ$ and $Z_0 = 100 \Omega$, calculated from the equations in Section 4.4.3, are shown with the 7 and 8 modal waveguide, as

The TE_{11} mode in Figure 7 is seen to have little θ variation of the θ -directed E-field and the ϕ -directed E-field. In the TE_{12} mode of Figure 8, the E-field is ϕ directed and the equivalent circuit for the tangential E-fields at the conductors are observed. TE_{mn} modes are similar to the modes shown here, but with of two diodes mounted back-to-back on a thick, flat conductor which extends horizontally to the waveguide wall, where it is grounded. This plate is orthogonal to the electric field of the TE_{10} -mode, and therefore does not affect the

CHAPTER 4. PASSIVE DEVICES

incorporate such capacitances into a filter to create a pass-band with very low loss and low response is very sensitive to the exact capacitor diode mounting structures often create filter aspects of the mounting structure proposed above each diode, with a tuning screw the gap presents as a series capacitor in the manufacturing fine-tuning of each equivalent structure apart, a so-called *in-situ* tuning, therefore be obtained.

The assembly drawing of a third order switch order filter was also constructed, and the graphs. Fig. 4.28 shows 60dB of isolation forward-biased, across the X-band. Such an using standard waveguide.

IEEE TRANSACTIONS ON MICROWAVE THEORY AND TECHNIQUES, VOL. 55, NO. 2, FEBRUARY 2007

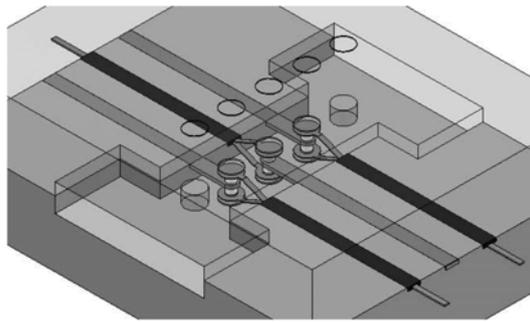
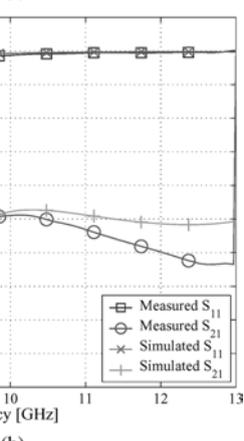
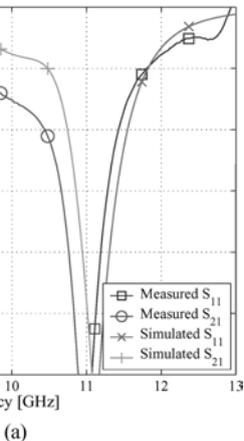
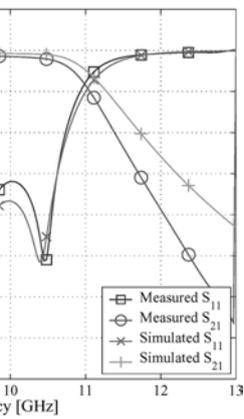


Fig. 7. Fifth-order switch.

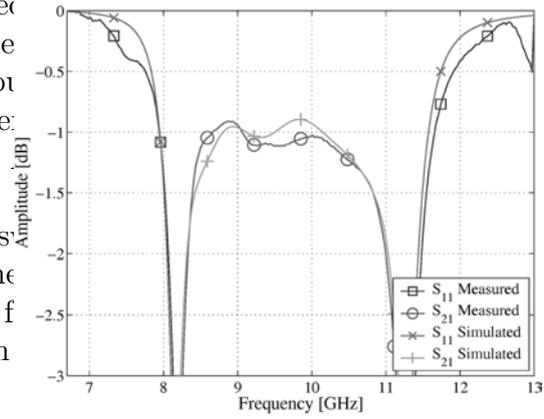
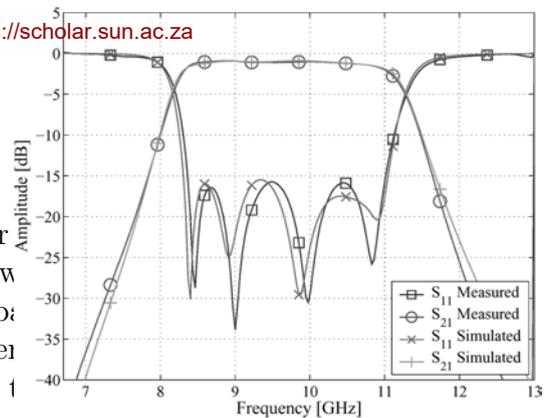
Figure 4.27: Third order switch

construction (from [72]) were performed using CST Microwave Studio and AWR Microwave Office.

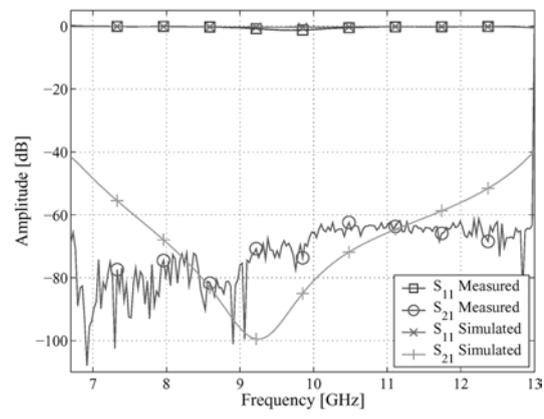
The evanescent guide length on either side of the diode may be changed to control the BW of the structure. The first single-mount switch achieved a fractional BW of 15% in the 15% BW structure with 22-dB return loss and 1.23-dB insertion loss when operating in the low-loss state, and 18-dB isolation and 1.23-dB return loss when operating in the isolation state, as shown in Fig. 4.30, and the second single-mount switch achieved a fractional BW of 25% with 15% BW repeatability, 15-dB return loss, and 1.53-dB insertion loss when operating in the low-loss state, and 24.4-dB isolation and 0.94-dB return loss when operating in the isolation state.

An important part of the complete switch is the power handling capability. High-power signals being shorted through the forward-biased diodes create large currents, which in turn create large amounts of heat in the diodes. A significant part of the design was therefore the development of an accurate thermal model, which not only includes thermal resistance, but also thermal capacitance. Especially the latter is of very high importance in pulsed systems.

Such a model, together with both high and low power measurements, was published in [86]. Some of the results, showing model response and measured



(a)



(b)

Figure 4.28: Fifth order switch at 10 GHz. Fifth-order switch—measurement versus theory. (a) Switch transmission (from [72])

Fig. 8(b), the relatively simple equivalent-circuit model is unable to accurately model the measured response.

Note the excellent return loss and low band loss. This was only possible due to the use of a higher order switch structure.

Some of the results, showing model response and measured

The proposed diode... of the resonant frequency... and feed lines entering... guide, perpendicular... switches show good... over a relatively wide... achieves an isolation... measured band (6.7 -... state, and 15.73-dB... a fractional BW of 2... The mount display... eries between the di... cessful reflection of... for a 24-μs pulsed... topology has only be... tures, however, it ma... structures with minor...

The authors wish to... (CST), Darmstadt, ... (AWR), El Segundo, ... as W. Croukamp and ... iese Dienste (SED), ... South Africa, for mar...

- [1] J. White, *Microw...* White, 1995.
- [2] R. Dawson and B... switch," in *IEEE*... 66.1.
- [3] P. Bakeman, Jr., ... width, X-band wa... *crow. Symp. Dig.*...
- [4] B. Sarkar, "Biased... *MTT-S Int. Micro*...
- [5] H. Meinel and B... tors and switches... 249–252, 79.1.
- [6] G. Craven and C... bandpass filters f... *Trans. Microw. T*... 1971.
- [7] L. Lewin, *Advan...* Sons, 1951.



CHAPTER 4. PASSIVE DEVICES

SICKEL *et al.*: *in situ* TUNABLE DIODE MOUNTING TOPOLOGY FOR HIGH-POWER X-

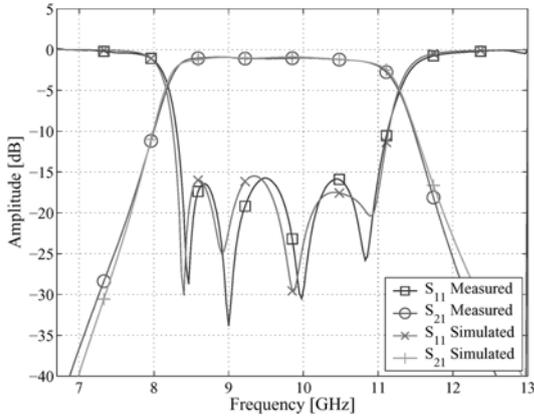


Figure 4.29: Fifth order switch in filter mode (from [72])

response, are shown in Fig. 4.31 for a low power, 1 microsecond pulse at a 10% duty cycle, and in Fig. 4.32 for an 8kW, 25 microsecond pulse at a 5% duty cycle. It is clear that the high power measurements show much higher peak temperatures for the model than in measurement. This can be attributed to a difficult-to-model increase of the I-region thermal capacitance at high peak powers. For the average temperature predictions however, the difference between the model and the measurements was only 11 degrees in the high power test. In all, the switch performed well at the 8kW peak power level.

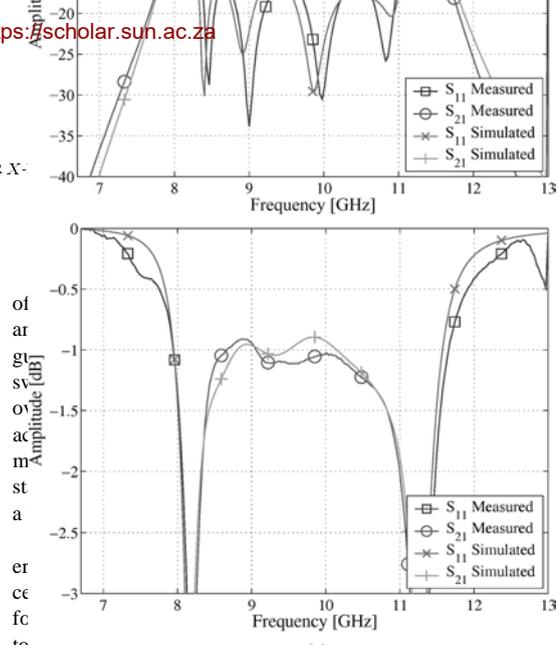


Figure 4.30: Fifth order switch at attenuation in filter mode (from [72])

Figure 4.31: Temperature [°C] vs Time [ms] for a low power test. The plot shows measured and simulated temperature responses over a 10ms period. The temperature peaks at approximately 29.5°C.

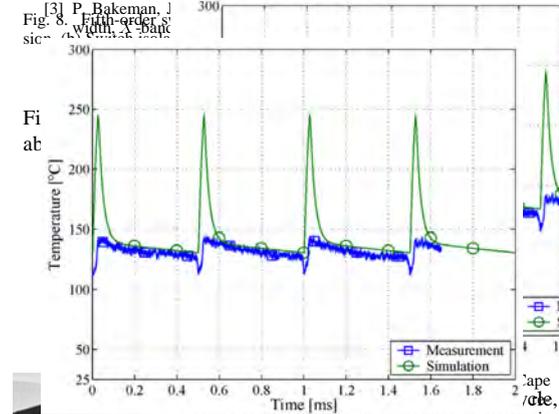


Figure 4.32: High Power switch low power test results (from [72])

measured band (6.7 — state, and 15.73-dB re a fractional BW of 21 The mount displays eries between the dio cessful reflection of a for a 24-μs pulsewid topology has only been tures, however, it may structures with minor

The authors wish to (CST), Darmstadt, C (AWR), El Segundo, as W. Croukamp and iesse Dienste (SED), U South Africa, for man

[1] J. White, *Microwa* White, 1995.
 [2] R. Dawson and B. I switch," in *IEEE M* 66.1.
 [3] P. Bakeman, Jr. ar width, X-band way crow. *Symp. Dig.*,
 [4] B. Sarkar, "Biased MIT-S Int. *Micro*
 [5] H. Meinel and B. tors and switches," 249–252, 79.1.
 [6] G. Craven and C. bandpass filters fo *Trans. Microw. Th* 1971.
 [7] L. Lewin, *Advanc* Sons, 1951.

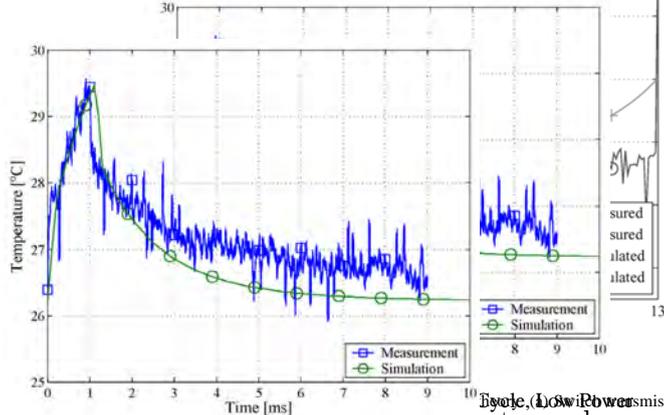
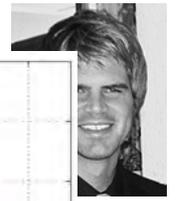


Figure 5: 1ms Pulse Width, 10% Duty Cycle, Low Power switch low power test results (from [72])

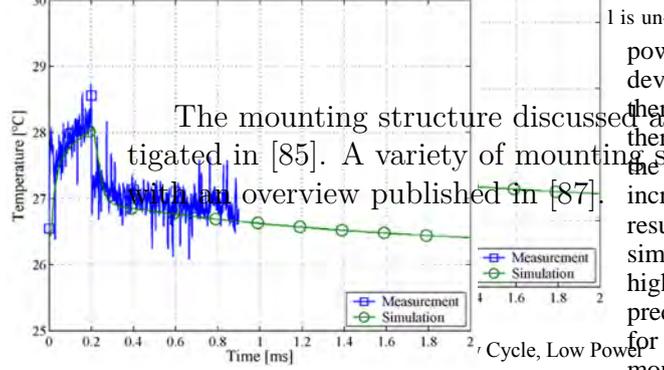


Figure 6: 200 μs Pulse Width, 10% Duty Cycle, Low Power



The mounting structure discussed above was investigated in [85]. A variety of mounting structures with an overview published in [87].

Figure 4.32: High Power switch low power test results (from [72])

Figure 4.32: High Power switch low power test results (from [72])

Figure 4.32: High Power switch low power test results (from [72])

ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

The authors wish to thank the National Research Foundation (NRF) of South Africa, the Wilhelm Frank Trust and Reutech Radar Systems (RRS) for support during the period of research.

REFERENCES

The work on the evanescent mode waveguide switch was my first work on devices using high-power diode control elements. Commercially, these switches are produced in very low numbers, at high cost, and for the specific requirement this work was aimed at, only one company globally was prepared to quote at the time. The successful completion of this product, and its subsequent introduction into the RADAR systems of the local sponsoring company, made this research some of the most directly applicable industry-related work of my career.

4.6 Conclusion

My research on passive devices has formed a significant part of my overall work. Being very closely coupled to local industry and its requirements, this work also created the need for a number of other research topics over the years, such as my work on modelling, optimisation and so forth. Throughout my career I have found that some of the most challenging research topics stem from industry products, as commercial systems in most cases require the satisfaction of a huge number of requirements - not only electrical, but also mechanical and thermal, with spatial and weight constraints typically very important. As such, this research often calls for high levels of originality, combined with very practical constraints.

Chapter 5

Antennas, Antenna Feeds, and Mixed-Mode Formulations

5.1 Introduction

For most of my career, my work was primarily aimed at microwave receiver subsystems, and stopped short of antennas. Due to the close integration between the filtering subsystems and the antenna feed in typical receivers and transmitters, antenna feeds however also on occasion formed part of my work up to 2012. In 2013, my research focus took a quite dramatic turn towards actual antennas, through my involvement with the Square Kilometre Array (SKA) project. Especially my involvement in higher order modes on guided structures would prove to be very useful in this area, and lead to various projects utilising the modal characteristics of structures in antenna and antenna feed design.

5.2 X-band monopulse waveguide feed

My first project on antenna feeds stemmed directly from my work on Mode-Matching and waveguide filter design, and involved the design of a waveguide feed for an X-band reflector antenna system for monopulse RADAR in 1999. In these systems, a number of waveguide feeds are typically first combined into one overmoded waveguide, which terminates in the radiating aperture. Using three specific combinations of excitations at the four waveguide ports, a single mode is excited in the radiating aperture in each case. For the excitations shown in Fig. 5.1 for instance, the TE_{10} , TE_{20} and TE_{11} modes are respectively excited, which in turn radiate in what is called the plus, elevation and azimuth modes.

One of main the problems with the design of these types of feed in the late 1990's, was the achievement of good input match across a wide band for all three excitations. At the time, the state-of-the-art was a system with an input match of -18dB for all three excitations, over a bandwidth of only 10%.

CHAPTER 5. ANTENNAS, ANTENNA FEEDS, AND MIXED-MODE FORMULATIONS

The fundamental problem in reaching the objective of low input reflection, is of course that one physical structure, i.e. the overmoded waveguide, has to match three different terminating impedances to the impedance of the source guide, one for each mode. In addition, each excitation generates a different mode in the overmoded guide, each of which has a different propagation constant. This is a classical optimisation problem, which, given the analysis so far, at the time, was simply intractable.

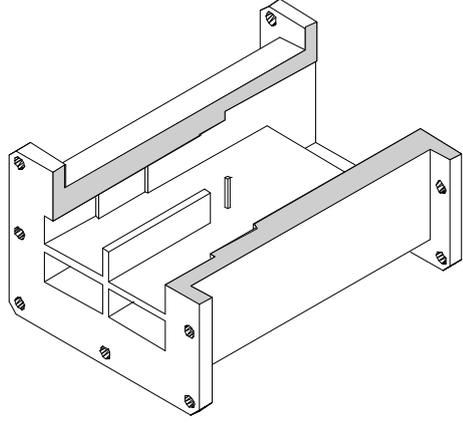
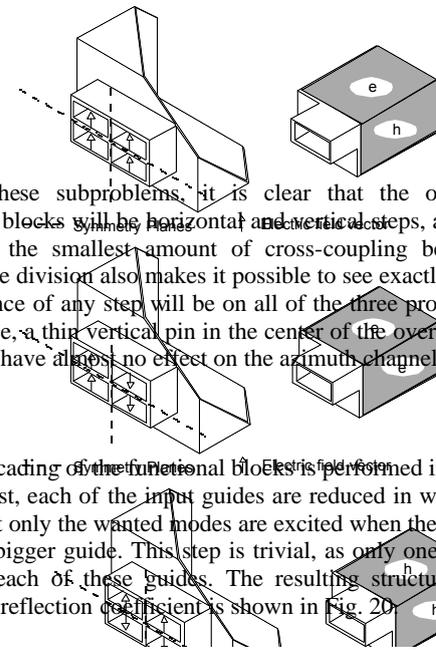


Figure 5.2: Monopulse Feed structure (from [45])

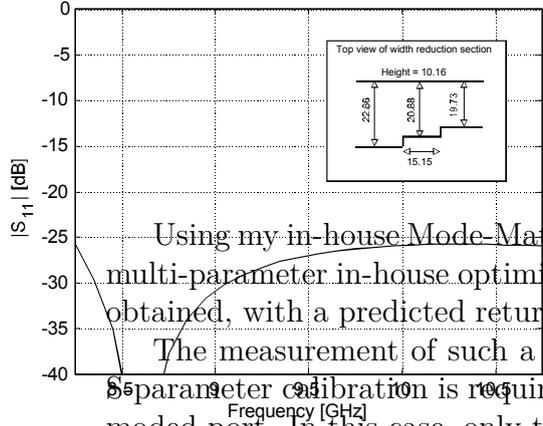


Figure 20: Reduction in Width of Input Guides

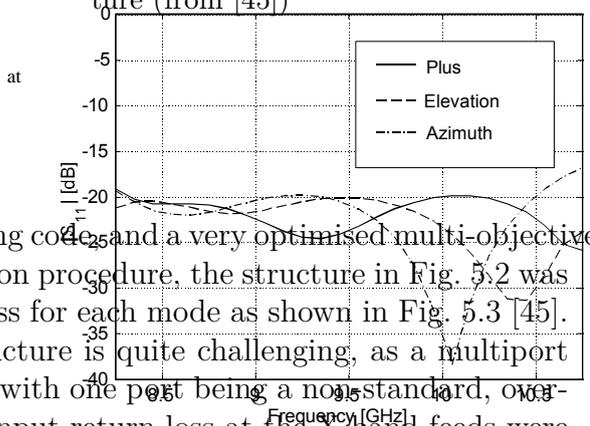


Figure 22: Predicted Results for Monopulse Feed

Using my in-house Mode-Matching code and a very optimised multi-objective, multi-parameter in-house optimisation procedure, the structure in Fig. 5.2 was obtained, with a predicted return loss for each mode as shown in Fig. 5.3 [45]. The measurement of such a structure is quite challenging, as a multipoint 5-parameter calibration is required, with one port being a nonstandard, overmoded port. In this case, only the input return loss at the X-band feeds were of interest, and the overmoded port could be terminated in a long guide of constant cross-section, and the measurement at the other ports time-gated to model a terminating line of infinite length. The measurements for each channel are shown in Fig. 5.4, Fig. 5.5, and Fig. 5.6. Note that, because of manufacturing tolerances and measurement inaccuracies, the four ports for each channel are not perfectly matched, but show slight differences.

The next stage is to cascade a number of vertical steps to remove the vertical wall separating the guides. These blocks affect the plus and elevation channels in the same way, with a relatively small effect on the azimuth channel. The final stage is to cascade a number of horizontal steps to remove the horizontal wall separating the guides. These steps have a negligible influence on the elevation channel, and a smaller effect on the other two channels. Both these stages are performed by optimising all three problems together.

D. Results

The final feed structure is shown in Fig. 21, with the calculated results shown in Fig. 22. An input match of better than 19dB is achieved over a 20% band. At the time of publication, measured results are not yet available.

V. CONCLUSIONS

Note that, because of manufacturing tolerances and measurement inaccuracies, the four ports for each channel are not perfectly matched, but show slight differences. The devices include wideband and narrowband designs, as well as passband and stopband topologies. Numerical analysis and optimisation play a large role in the designs, but must be preceded by intelligent choices of functional blocks, which in turn depend on a good understanding of the electromagnetic properties of the problem, and the field distributions.

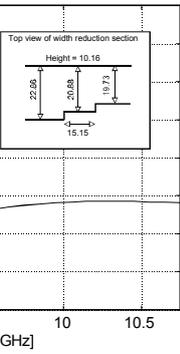
ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

The authors acknowledge Mr. Wessel Croukamp, who was responsible for the construction of all of the prototypes.

blocks is performed in three sides are reduced in width to s are excited when they open is trivial, as only one mode The resulting structure and shown in Fig. 20.

FORMULATIONS

Figure 21: Monopulse Feed



width of Input Guides

number of vertical steps to ing the guides. These blocks nels in the same way, with a uth channel. The final stage zontal steps to remove the des. These steps have a big l, and a smaller effect on the e stages are performed by ether.

shown in Fig. 21, with the 22. An input match of better 20% band. At the time of not yet available.

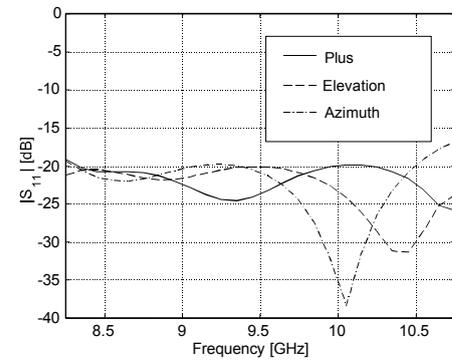


Figure 22: Predicted Results for Monopulse Feed

Figure 5.3: Monopulse feed predicted modal return loss (from [45])

A number of designs have been presented to illustrate an approach to the design of devices utilising multiple propagating modes. All the designs are based on the identification of a device designs. Numerical designs functional understanding of the problem.

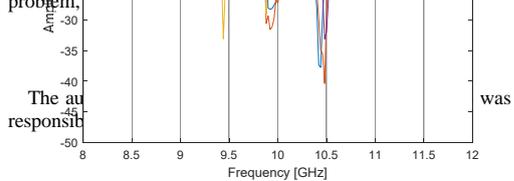


Figure 5.5: Monopulse feed azimuth channel return loss

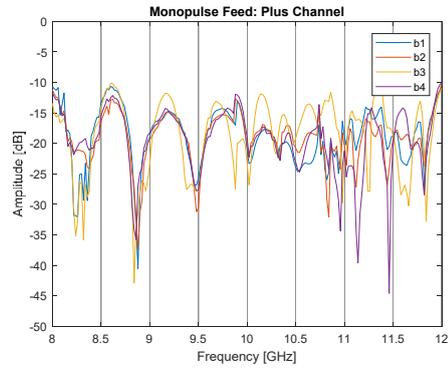


Figure 5.4: Monopulse feed plus channel return loss

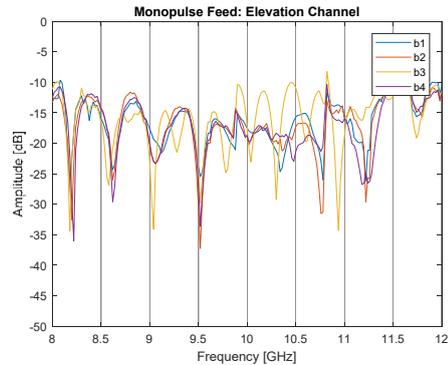


Figure 5.6: Monopulse feed elevation channel return loss

It is however clear that good return loss is measured for each port of each channel over the full X-band of 8-12GHz, or a 40% bandwidth.

These results represented a factor of four improvement in bandwidth over the state-of-the-art, and provided validation of the analysis and optimisation techniques developed in-house. This type of antenna, which has different radiation patterns for different excitation combinations, would later become part of a class of antennas which currently is called multi-mode antennas, and the expertise gained in this project would prove to be extremely useful two decades later.

5.3 The Square Kilometre Array Antenna

Many years would pass before I would become involved in antenna work again. The event which would trigger this was the SKA initiative which started in the early 2000's, with the aim of creating the world's largest radio-astronomy

antenna - one with an effective receiving aperture of one square kilometre. Such a telescope would enable radio astronomy science at a completely new level of sensitivity.

The project was of particular interest to South Africa, as we have some of the most easily accessible radio-quiet zones in the world in a semi-desert region known as the Karoo. In order to convince the international SKA steering group of the viability of situating the antenna system in South Africa, the South African Department of Science and Technology (DST) approved the biggest funding for a single science project in the history of the country, with the aim of building a pathfinder antenna array on the proposed site. The name of the first phase of seven large dishes was proposed as the Karoo Array Telescope, or KAT-7. This phase was extended to 64 dishes, with the new name of MEERKAT. (In Afrikaans, 'meer' means more, thus literally 'more KAT', but a meerkat is also a small rodent which is unique to Africa.) Both KAT-7 and MEERKAT were fully designed and constructed locally, using local engineers, companies and universities.

At the time of writing, the main SKA site has been confirmed as the Karoo, and phase 1 of the SKA is starting construction. By some coincidence, on this day of writing, i.e. Friday 13 July 2018, the full MEERKAT array was inaugurated in a ceremony at the site close to Carnavon - a historic moment for South African engineering and science. The partially completed telescope has been in operation for science work for almost a year already, and the first science paper was published early in 2018. A recent photograph is shown in Fig. 5.7.



Figure 5.7: The MEERKAT antenna array

Alongside the actual technical project, the DST also launched an SKA focused human capital development programme, which currently supports on

the order of 100 postgraduate students in the country. The SKA programme has had a significant influence on the research landscape in South Africa, and has been a focal point of government funding.

My own involvement in the SKA project has been substantial, both on the technical side with the development of receiver subsystems for KAT-7 and MEERKAT, and on the research side. Through my own efforts and that of my colleagues Profs David Davidson and Howard Reader, our department developed very strong ties with the South African SKA office, and currently have three staff positions funded in this way - one being a full research chair which forms part of the South African research Chairs' Initiative (SARCHI), a highly prestigious position.

The involvement with the SKA project caused me for the first time to broaden my research interest to include antennas and antenna systems. Two areas were of specific interest to SKA, namely wideband waveguide feeds for reflector antennas (SKA Phase 1 and 2), and small, inexpensive, lower frequency antenna elements which could be used as part of an array of thousands of fixed antennas (the SKA Mid-Frequency Aperture Array, or MFAA). In 2013, in cooperation with Profs Marianna Ivashina and Rob Maaskant from Chalmers University in Gothenburgh, I and two of my PhD students started on what would be my first serious antenna research.

5.4 Multi-mode antennas and mixed-mode systems

5.4.1 Dual-mode antennas

The first of these projects ran from 2013 to 2015 with my PhD student Dr David Prinsloo, co-supervised by the Chalmers group, and focused on developing a stationary antenna element to form part of the MFAA [88]. As stationary elements rotate with the earth, maximum observation times are directly dependent on the field-of-view of each element, with the ideal element having a $\pm 90^\circ$ coverage from zenith. In radio astronomy, images are created by integrating for long periods (hours) while looking at a fixed point in the sky, therefore longer observation times yield better results. Antenna elements with fields-of-view approaching a full hemisphere are however very rare, with the quadrifilar helix being the best option at that time.

The first attempt at creating an element with a hemispherical field-of-view, was reported in [89], and is shown in Fig. 5.8. The antenna consists of a double-sided substrate, with on one side a narrow section of groundplane, connected to a single, open-circuited quarter-wave line. On the other side of the substrate, a balanced folded dipole structure is implemented. Only the two lines feeding the dipole are excited with respect to the narrow groundplane. Two possible orthogonal excitations can be used, i.e. a *common mode* and a *differential*

the simulated results, deviating by a maximum of 1.3 dB for scan angles from zenith to $\pm 60^\circ$. Note that the loss in CM gain, seen when comparing Figs. 4 and 6, is due to the finite ground plane used for the physical antenna.

4 VERIFICATION RESULTS

4.1 Simulated Results

The antenna design described in Sec. 3 is analysed with an infinite ground plane in both the SE and MM excitation configurations, using CST MICROWAVE STUDIO[®]. Using (1), the equivalent DM and CM EEPs of the antenna can be determined from the SE EEPs shown in Fig. 3. The transformed E - and H -plane EEPs are compared to the MM EEPs, simulated with DM and CM excitations, in Figs. 4(a) and (b), respectively. It is clear from Fig. 4 that (1) provides a near exact solution for the MM EEPs of the antenna.

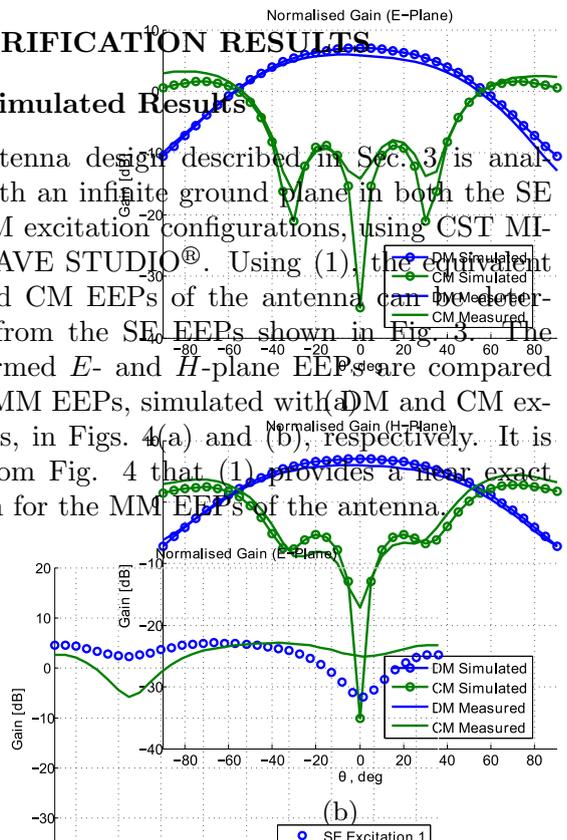


Figure 4: Simulated and transformed MM embedded element patterns (a) E -plane and (b) H -plane with maximized gain per scan angle (from [89])

5 CONCLUSION

A dual-mode antenna allowing both DM and CM excitations has been presented. Unlike conventional differentially excited antennas, the designed antennas are actually defined in terms of the common-mode and the differential-mode. The MM performance of the antenna will be solved from a mixed-mode S-parameters, impedances, patterns, gains etc. However, the theory at the time for the analysis of receiver systems made no provision for this, hence the SE ports are terminated in terms of single-ended ports.

Figure 3: Simulated SE EEPs formulated in terms of (a) E -plane and (b) H -plane (from [89])

As illustrated conceptually in Fig. 1, Fig. 4 shows that DM and CM excitations realise dipole-over-ground and monopole beam patterns, respectively. The sharp decrease in gain of the DM EEP, seen for scan angles greater than 60° , can therefore be prevented by applying a CM excitation. By solving the respective MM complex beam forming weights the antenna gain (4) can be maximised for each scan angle. The optimally combined E - and H -plane gain (DM + CM), shown in Fig. 4, can be seen to follow the DM EEP for $0^\circ \leq \theta \leq 60^\circ$, from where the DM gain decreases significantly. For scan angles $60^\circ \leq \theta \leq 90^\circ$ the combined gain follows the CM EEP closely. Note that the combined E -

[1] R. T. Schilizzi *et al.* (2007, Dec.) Preliminary specifications for the square kilometre array. *10th MMS Workshop*. [Online]. Available: <http://www.skatelescope.org/PDF/memos/>

[2] Garcia-Munoz *et al.*, "Fida3: A novel active array design for the mid-frequency range of the square kilometre array," in *Antennas and Propagation (EuCAP), 2010 Proceedings of the 4th European Conference on*, pp. 1–4.

[3] A. Faulkner *et al.* (2010, Apr.) The aperture array for the ska: the skads white paper. [Online]. Available: <http://www.skatelescope.org/publications>

[4] A. Brown *et al.*, "Wideband planar phased arrays for the square kilometre array," in *Phased Array Systems and Technology (ARRAY), 2010 IEEE International Symposium on*, Oct., pp. 616–623.

[5] E. de Lera Acedo *et al.*, "Study and design of a differentially fed tapered slot antenna array," *Antennas and Propagation, IEEE Transactions on*, vol. 58, no. 78, Jan. 2010.

[6] S. G. Hay and J. G. Sullivan, "Analysis of common-mode effects in a dual-polarized planar connected-array antenna," *Radio Science*, vol. 43, no. RS6S04, pp. 1–9, Dec. 2008.

Figure 5: Calculated common-mode resonances element patterns (a) E -plane and (b) H -plane (from [89])

plane gain shown in Fig. 4(a) is greater than either DM or CM gains for scan angles larger than $\pm 20^\circ$ from zenith, whereas the combined H -plane gain (DM + CM) follows the DM gain from 0° to 60° and the CM gain from 60° to 90° . The combined gain is shown in Fig. 4(a) and is greater than either DM or CM gains for scan angles larger than $\pm 20^\circ$ from zenith, whereas the combined H -plane gain (DM + CM) follows the DM gain from 0° to 60° and the CM gain from 60° to 90° . The result-ant gain is shown to be less than 5 dB in both planes.

4.2 Measured Results

The antenna is fixed to a circular ground plane with a diameter of 500 mm. The S-parameters of the MM antenna are obtained by applying the transformation in (3) to the measured SE antenna S-matrix. Fig. 5 shows that the transformed (measured) DM and CM return loss of the antenna agrees well with the simulated MM return loss.

Gain measurements are performed by exciting each of the SE ports individually, while terminating the remaining port in a 50 Ω load. The MM EEPs of the antenna can then be solved from the SE measurements using the transformations in (1). Figs. 6(a) and (b) compare the measured E - and H -plane gain of the antenna to simulated results. The measured gains show good agreement with

CHAPTER 5. ANTENNAS, ANTENNA FEEDS, AND MIXED-MODE FORMULATIONS

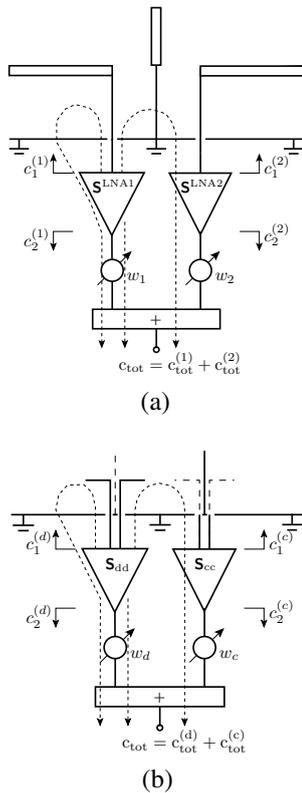


Figure 5.14: Dual mode receiver (a) Common mode (b) Differential mode (from [90])

obtained by a normal crossed-dipole antenna, and the crossed-dipole only achieves a good IXR over a small region around zenith whereas the QMA shows excellent IXR over a wide bandwidth.

5.4.4 Further improvements

The development of the QMA concept was a quest for wider bandwidth, and to better control the matching of the fourth mode. Firstly, the crossed dipole was replaced by an etched, crossed bow-tie antenna, and the cylindrical sheath by a conical one, as shown in Fig. 5.21, and then a tapered-slot antenna was implemented in the gaps between the bow-ties, as shown in Fig. 5.23. From Figs 5.22 and 5.24, it is clear that both modifications improved the matching bandwidth, but that the addition of the TSA was the final required step to create a QMA with all four modes matched over a wide bandwidth.

These antennas were evaluated for different beam-forming strategies in [94], manufacturability [92], and quality of IXR [93]. In terms of radio astronomy

using a mixed different proposed mixed-mode the sensitivity of a novel utilizing, rather than rej that, regardless of the presence of a CM cha exhibits only a 3 dB se compared to a 10 dB l rejecting CM propagati

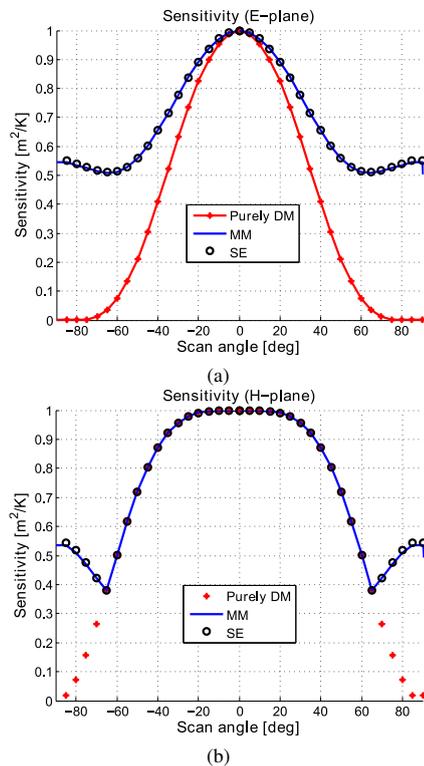


Figure 5.15: Sensitivity (a) E-plane (b) H-plane (from [90])

Fig. (b) illustrates the increase in the equivalent noise temperature attributed to the CM present in the MM receiver, the utilization of CM propagation can result in an increase in the sensitivity over the entire FoV coverage when compared to the conventional receivers where CM is completely rejected. It is clear that the increase in the sensitivity of less than 50% in the E- and 60% in the H-plane. A comparison between the variation in sensitivity in Fig. 15 and the gain variation depicted in Fig. 16 shows that the variation in sensitivity corresponds to the gain variation in both planes.

As a final validation of the MM receiver model presented in this paper, Fig. 13 shows that the MM sensitivity analysis produces the same result obtained when analyzing the antenna and receiver using the equivalent SE S-matrix S_{SE}^{ant} and EEPs $J_1(\theta, \phi)$ and $J_2(\theta, \phi)$ with the corresponding SE complex scattering parameters $\{S_{11}, S_{12}, S_{21}, S_{22}\}$ and $\{S_{dd}, S_{cc}\}$ for the SE and MM representations, respectively. With the theoretical framework presented in this paper, single-polarized active receiving antennas can be modeled

Previous works [26] antenna structures, referred to have good polarime discrimination capability as a receiving antenna, radio astronomy applic analysis of a dual-pola mode active receiving a well as an array thereof bandwidth.

In addition to the M responding set of MM dLNA. Toward this end of the balanced dLNA a parameters of the consti Note that the derivatio LNAs are identical, isol uncorrelated.

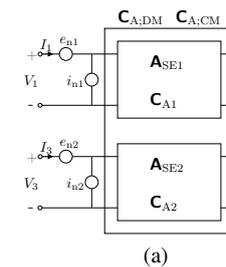


Fig. 14. Equivalent noise source for two isolated LNAs in (a) chain representation

Each SE LNA can be modeled with a noise voltage source V_i in series with a noiseless transmission line. A physically significant representation is given by their self and mutual correlation matrix, hence the correlation matrix, hence the representation of the correlation matrix. One of the functions of the correlation matrix is to represent the correlation of its elements to the noise

CHAPTER 3. ANTENNAS, ANTENNA FEEDS, AND MIXED-MODE FORMULATIONS

na excited through four modes is presented. The e are validated through entary nature of the four hich near-hemispherical

use of multi-mode an- (V) coverage of phased- n sparse configurations mple orthogonal Trans- o excite integrated, and ments through a multi- e authors introduce a arate the improved FoV tivity and polarimetric rough judicious use of des.

multi-mode response of The presented results e four orthogonal exci- ode antenna to achieve

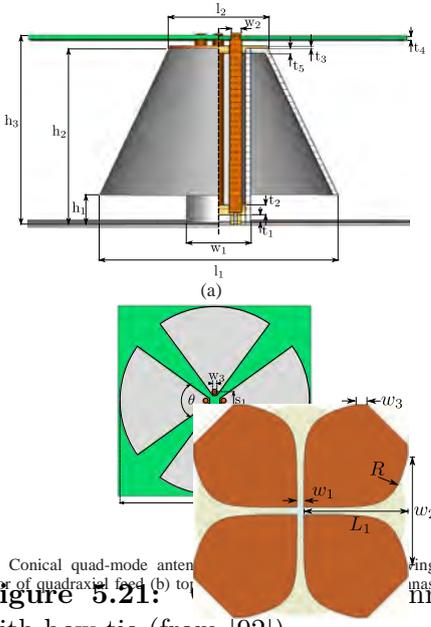


Fig. 1. Conical quad-mode antenna with quadraxial feed (a) top view and (b) top view of the quadraxial feed.

Figure 5.21: Conical quad-mode antenna with bow-tie (from [92])

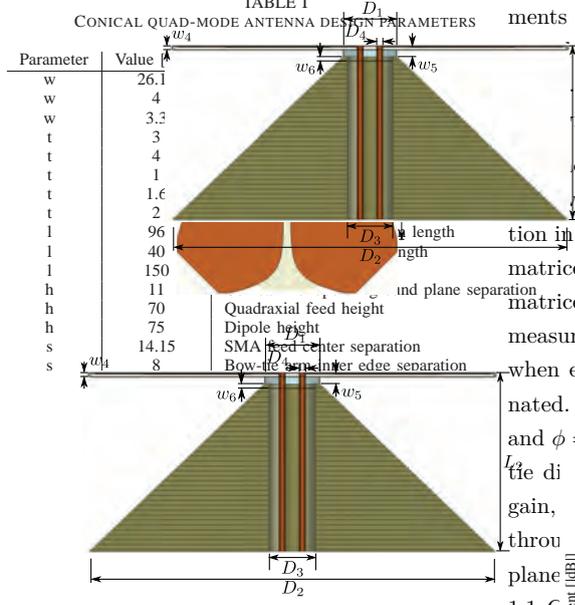


Figure 5.23: Quad-mode antenna with TSA (from [93])

scenarios [97], in both Random-Line-of-Sight (RLOS) and Rich Isotropic Multipath (RIMP) environments.

During the same period, both the crossed-bowtie and tapered-slot versions of the QMA were awarded patents [98][99]. This led to an award from the South African government's Technology Innovation Agency (TIA) seed fund, which supports the development of innovative ideas into commercial products,

bandwidth of modes MM_1 and MM_2 . The input reflection coefficients of modes MM_1 and MM_2 are seen to be in better agreement with the simulated response, with both approximating to one another over the entire frequency band. Lastly, similar to the simulated response, measurements show that mode MM_4 is largely mismatched across the band.

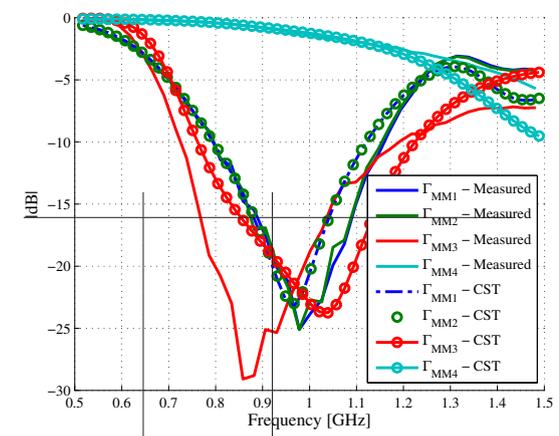


Figure 3.34: Input reflection coefficient of the four orthogonal excitation modes for the conical quad-mode antenna transformed from SE measurements compared to simulated results.

Figure 5.22: Matching of QMA with bow-tie (from [88])

Despite these small discrepancies between the simulated and measured response, the results still illustrate that two orthogonal dipoles and a conical monopole element can be excited individually through a single quadraxial transmission line. As shown in Figure 3.34, an input match below -10 dB can be achieved within the same frequency bandwidth for all three integrated elements of the conical quad-mode antenna.

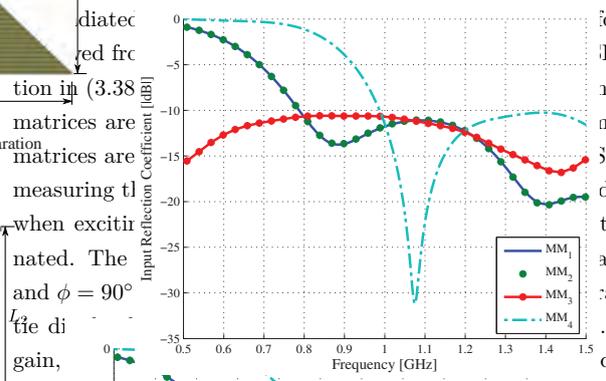


Figure 5.24: Matching of QMA with TSA (from [93])

four orthogonal excitation modes. The far-field patterns for the four orthogonal excitations, using the transmission matrices, are shown in Figure 5.25. The voltage and current coefficients for the multi-mode characteristic impedance matrices are shown in Figure 5.26. The far-field patterns are obtained by the conical quad-mode antenna. The three ports characteristic impedance matrices are measured through the antenna when excited by the four orthogonal modes. The radiation patterns for the four orthogonal modes and $\phi = 90^\circ$ are shown in Figure 5.26. The radiation patterns are measured through the antenna when excited by the four orthogonal modes. The radiation patterns for the four orthogonal modes and $\phi = 90^\circ$ are shown in Figure 5.26. The radiation patterns are measured through the antenna when excited by the four orthogonal modes.

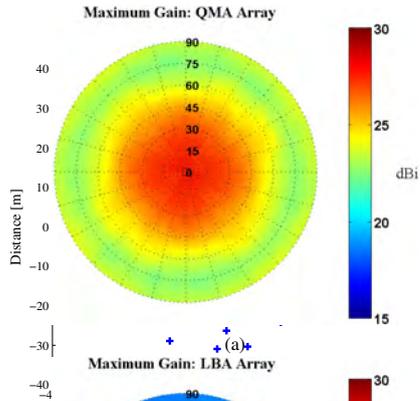


Fig. 5.

array, C

From Figs.

shown along t

below -10 dB

largely mismat

TEM₁ mutual

below -30 dB

to develop a QMA for a wifi router.

at the time of writing.

Due to the similar radiation patterns of modes TEM₁

and TEM₂ the mutual coupling between the QMA elements

[c.f. Fig. 76 (a) and (b)] are rather low, especially for the QMA array.

Since the QMA radiates in a dipole-over-ground fashion when excited by modes TEM₁ and

TEM₂, little power is radiated towards adjacent array elements,

resulting in low mutual coupling between the elements. As

shown in Fig. 6(c), the monopole-like radiation pattern of

mode TEM₃ results in significantly more mutual coupling

between the array elements. To describe the general radiation

pattern of some of the array elements, mutual coupling between

the LBA array configurations is discussed in the next section, as

the elements remain below -15 dB for all excitation modes. Given

the high degree of isolation between modes, the simulated

cross-coupling between modes are below -20 dB

and a therefore $|S_{ij}| < 10^{-2}$ for $i \neq j$ and $|\theta| < 90^\circ$.

coupled ports did not exist at this time.

The mixed-mode sensitivity analysis is completed over

the hemispherical FoV where $\mathbf{r} = \hat{\mathbf{r}}$ for the four excitation

modes. For $\theta = 90^\circ$ and $\hat{\mathbf{r}}$ is a unit vector directed toward

the point of observation since the point source elements are

located in the plane of the elements. The radiation pattern

within the array environment and the resulting gain of each

element is therefore shown over the entire hemispherical

FoV. The maximum gain of the QMA array is 15 dB at

-90° to 90° of the QMA, LBA, and point source arrays

are compared in Fig. 7 (b). The gain of the QMA array is

at boresight compared to the LBA array [c.f. Fig. 7(b)] with

variation in gain for the array of point source elements

is observed. The reduction in gain at larger scan angles can

be attributed to the reduction in gain of approximately 8 dB when scan-

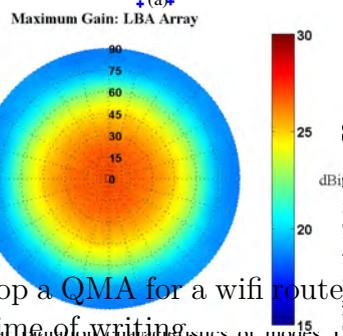
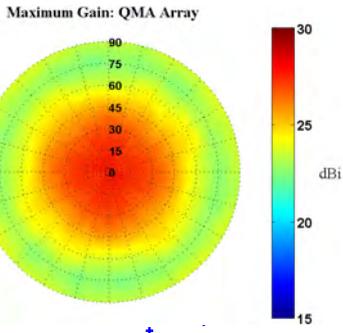


Fig. 6.

Magnitude of the S-parameters of each TEM excitation mode

for the QMA array.

Using the gain of the QMA array can be computed over

the hemispherical FoV where $\mathbf{r} = \hat{\mathbf{r}}$ for the four excitation

modes. For $\theta = 90^\circ$ and $\hat{\mathbf{r}}$ is a unit vector directed toward

the point of observation since the point source elements are

located in the plane of the elements. The radiation pattern

within the array environment and the resulting gain of each

element is therefore shown over the entire hemispherical

FoV. The maximum gain of the QMA array is 15 dB at

-90° to 90° of the QMA, LBA, and point source arrays

are compared in Fig. 7 (b). The gain of the QMA array is

at boresight compared to the LBA array [c.f. Fig. 7(b)] with

variation in gain for the array of point source elements

is observed. The reduction in gain at larger scan angles can

be attributed to the reduction in gain of approximately 8 dB when scan-

ing toward the horizon. Comparing the variation in gain of the

QMA array to the LBA array, the QMA array exhibits a 5 dB

increase in gain towards the horizon when compared with the

LBA array. Since the layout of the LBA station has not been

optimized for the QMA array, future work will be done toward

optimizing the QMA array for the LBA station.

Since the layout of the LBA station has not been

optimized for the QMA array, future work will be done toward

optimizing the QMA array for the LBA station.

Since the layout of the LBA station has not been

optimized for the QMA array, future work will be done toward

optimizing the QMA array for the LBA station.

Since the layout of the LBA station has not been

optimized for the QMA array, future work will be done toward

optimizing the QMA array for the LBA station.

Since the layout of the LBA station has not been

optimized for the QMA array, future work will be done toward

optimizing the QMA array for the LBA station.

Since the layout of the LBA station has not been

optimized for the QMA array, future work will be done toward

optimizing the QMA array for the LBA station.

Since the layout of the LBA station has not been

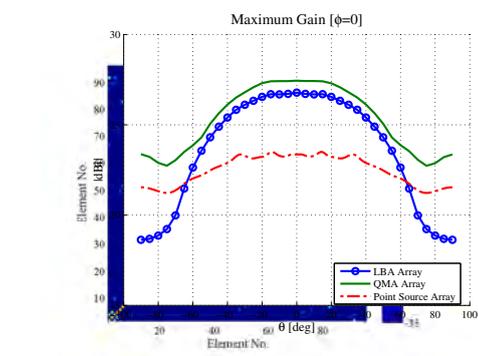


Fig. 8. Comparison of the maximized gain of the QMA and LBA arrays over a hemispherical radiation of point source elements.

Figure 5 and 6 of hemispherical radiation of point source elements.

the maximized gain of the QMA and LBA

arrays with an array of hemispherically

excited elements. The phase variation of the

elements is largely ascribed to the phase variation of the

excitation modes of the QMA elements, which are below -15 dB,

with the monopole-like radiation pattern of excitation mode TEM₃

resulting in the largest coupling between the QMA elements.

Since the layout of the LBA station has not been optimized for the

QMA array, future work will be done toward optimizing the QMA

array for the LBA station. Since the layout of the LBA station has not

been optimized for the QMA array, future work will be done toward

optimizing the QMA array for the LBA station.

Since the layout of the LBA station has not been optimized for the

QMA array, future work will be done toward optimizing the QMA

array for the LBA station. Since the layout of the LBA station has not

been optimized for the QMA array, future work will be done toward

optimizing the QMA array for the LBA station.

Since the layout of the LBA station has not been optimized for the

QMA array, future work will be done toward optimizing the QMA

array for the LBA station. Since the layout of the LBA station has not

been optimized for the QMA array, future work will be done toward

optimizing the QMA array for the LBA station.

Since the layout of the LBA station has not been optimized for the

QMA array, future work will be done toward optimizing the QMA

array for the LBA station. Since the layout of the LBA station has not

been optimized for the QMA array, future work will be done toward

optimizing the QMA array for the LBA station.

Since the layout of the LBA station has not been optimized for the

QMA array, future work will be done toward optimizing the QMA

array for the LBA station. Since the layout of the LBA station has not

been optimized for the QMA array, future work will be done toward

optimizing the QMA array for the LBA station.

Since the layout of the LBA station has not been optimized for the

QMA array, future work will be done toward optimizing the QMA

array for the LBA station. Since the layout of the LBA station has not

been optimized for the QMA array, future work will be done toward

optimizing the QMA array for the LBA station.

Since the layout of the LBA station has not been optimized for the

QMA array, future work will be done toward optimizing the QMA

array for the LBA station. Since the layout of the LBA station has not

been optimized for the QMA array, future work will be done toward

optimizing the QMA array for the LBA station.

Since the layout of the LBA station has not been optimized for the

QMA array, future work will be done toward optimizing the QMA

array for the LBA station. Since the layout of the LBA station has not

been optimized for the QMA array, future work will be done toward

3.4.6 General Scattering Parameter Transformations

applied to antennas. This work has been completed successfully. Using the layout of the LOFAR LBA station at Onsala space observatory in Sweden, the maximum gain of a QMA array has been compared with the maximum gain achieved by the LBA array over a hemispherical FoV. It is shown that the QMA array shows a 5 dB increase in gain variation over the FoV, compared with that of a single isolated element. This increase in gain is caused by the radiation of the QMA elements, which are below -15 dB, with the monopole-like radiation pattern of excitation mode TEM₃ resulting in the largest coupling between the QMA elements. Since the layout of the LBA station has not been optimized for the QMA array, future work will be done toward optimizing the QMA array for the LBA station. Since the layout of the LBA station has not been optimized for the QMA array, future work will be done toward optimizing the QMA array for the LBA station. Since the layout of the LBA station has not been optimized for the QMA array, future work will be done toward optimizing the QMA array for the LBA station.

IV. MAXIMUM GAIN OF QUAD-MODE ANTENNA ARRAY (2)

where the gain of the QMA array can be computed over the hemispherical FoV where $\mathbf{r} = \hat{\mathbf{r}}$ for the four excitation modes. For $\theta = 90^\circ$ and $\hat{\mathbf{r}}$ is a unit vector directed toward the point of observation since the point source elements are located in the plane of the elements. The radiation pattern within the array environment and the resulting gain of each element is therefore shown over the entire hemispherical FoV. The maximum gain of the QMA array is 15 dB at -90° to 90° of the QMA, LBA, and point source arrays are compared in Fig. 7 (b). The gain of the QMA array is at boresight compared to the LBA array [c.f. Fig. 7(b)] with variation in gain for the array of point source elements is observed. The reduction in gain at larger scan angles can be attributed to the reduction in gain of approximately 8 dB when scanning toward the horizon. Comparing the variation in gain of the QMA array to the LBA array, the QMA array exhibits a 5 dB increase in gain towards the horizon when compared with the LBA array. Since the layout of the LBA station has not been optimized for the QMA array, future work will be done toward optimizing the QMA array for the LBA station. Since the layout of the LBA station has not been optimized for the QMA array, future work will be done toward optimizing the QMA array for the LBA station. Since the layout of the LBA station has not been optimized for the QMA array, future work will be done toward optimizing the QMA array for the LBA station.

The Generalized Multi-Mode Scattering Matrix Transformation

which extended the network theory at the time to include completely general modal sets consisting of arbitrary combinations of coupled ports with arbitrary weighting. In addition, it showed that not only circuit parameters could be transformed,

Fig. 6. Magnitude of the S-parameters of each TEM excitation mode for the QMA array.

the maximized gain of the QMA and LBA

arrays with an array of hemispherically

excited elements. The phase variation of the

elements is largely ascribed to the phase variation of the

excitation modes of the QMA elements, which are below -15 dB,

with the monopole-like radiation pattern of excitation mode TEM₃

resulting in the largest coupling between the QMA elements.

Since the layout of the LBA station has not been optimized for the

QMA array, future work will be done toward optimizing the QMA

array for the LBA station. Since the layout of the LBA station has not

been optimized for the QMA array, future work will be done toward

optimizing the QMA array for the LBA station.

This is especially useful for the transformation of antenna far-fields. It is shown that the antenna far-fields generated by arbitrary multi-mode excitations can be successfully calculated from a set of far-fields generated by single-ended excitations by the use of the network transformation as applied to the S-parameters. This makes it possible to determine multi-mode antenna far-fields from a set of single-ended measurements, but measurements are significantly easier to perform than multi-mode measurements.

To perform a transformation

To develop the theory, consider an N-port network (network B) and a different way to form two equivalent N-port networks (network A) as shown in Fig. 5.27. Each network is described by an S-matrix $S^{A,B}$ with port voltages $(V_n^{A,B})$, port currents $(I_n^{A,B})$, and port impedances $(Z_n^{A,B})$ indicated for both networks. In addition, the incident $(a_n^{A,B})$ and reflected $(b_n^{A,B})$ waves are also shown at each port. For the case where the port voltages and port currents of network B are linear combinations of the voltages and currents of network A, the aim is to establish a transformation from S^A to S^B for an arbitrary set of port impedances. A typical scenario would for instance be one where network A consists of N single-ended ports, each terminated by the same reference impedance, and network B of sets of differential ports and possible single-ended ports, each terminated by a different impedance.

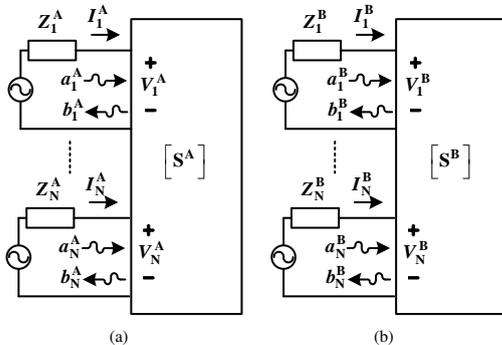


Fig. 1. N-port networks with ports using (a) mode set A and (b) mode set B

Figure 5.27: Multi-port Networks

(From the 103) In the completely general case, the port voltages and currents of network B can be expressed as linear combinations of any or all of the port voltages and currents of network A. That is,

$$V_n^B = k_{n1}^v V_1^A + k_{n2}^v V_2^A + \dots + k_{nN}^v V_N^A$$

By defining matrices M_S^+ and M_C in terms of the k_{ni}^v and diagonal matrices containing the port impedances of each network, an expression for the incident and reflected waves can be derived.

$$\mathbf{v}^B = \mathbf{K}^v \mathbf{v}^A \quad (2a)$$

$$\mathbf{i}^B = \mathbf{K}^{i1} \mathbf{i}^A \quad (2b)$$

$$\mathbf{M}_S = \frac{1}{2} (\mathbf{Z}^B)^{-\frac{1}{2}} \mathbf{K}^v (\mathbf{Z}^A)^{\frac{1}{2}} + \frac{1}{2} (\mathbf{Z}^B)^{\frac{1}{2}} \mathbf{K}^{i1} (\mathbf{Z}^A)^{-\frac{1}{2}}$$

$$\mathbf{M}_C = \frac{1}{2} (\mathbf{Z}^B)^{-\frac{1}{2}} \mathbf{K}^v (\mathbf{Z}^A)^{\frac{1}{2}} - \frac{1}{2} (\mathbf{Z}^B)^{\frac{1}{2}} \mathbf{K}^{i1} (\mathbf{Z}^A)^{-\frac{1}{2}}$$

$$\mathbf{a}^B = \mathbf{M}_S \mathbf{a}^A + \mathbf{M}_C \mathbf{b}^A \quad (5.3a)$$

$$\mathbf{b}^B = \mathbf{M}_C \mathbf{a}^A + \mathbf{M}_S \mathbf{b}^A \quad (5.3b)$$

where $\mathbf{V}^{A,B}$ and $\mathbf{I}^{A,B}$ denote $[N \times 1]$ matrices containing the port voltages and currents of networks A and B and $\mathbf{K}^{v,i}$ are $[N \times N]$ matrices as in (3) and (4).

multi-mode antennas [103]. Especially the transformation is very powerful, as it allows any set of antenna measurements to be transformed to any set of mixed-mode parameters.

While \mathbf{K}^v and \mathbf{K}^{i1} can in general be chosen independently, a choice which guarantees the conservation of power under the transformation makes more physical sense, and will also be seen to reduce to the standard formulations in the case of differential and common-mode descriptions. In this case, the total complex power in networks A and B are set to be equal, requiring from Tellegen's theorem that the sum of the products of each port voltage and current remains constant under the transformation, as shown in (5).

$$\mathbf{V}^{B\dagger} \mathbf{I}^B = \mathbf{V}^{A\dagger} \mathbf{I}^A \quad (5)$$

where \dagger denotes the conjugate transpose. From (2a) and (2b)

$$\mathbf{Z}^A = \text{diag}(Z_1, \dots, Z_N)$$

$$\mathbf{Z}^B = \text{diag}(Z_{d1}, \dots, Z_{c1}, \dots, Z_N)$$

It is again straightforward to yield the same number of modes as discussed by Ferrero et al.

The theory of section 4.1 yields the same number of modes as discussed by Ferrero et al.

However, it also allows in which any number of modes can be used using arbitrary weights by simply choosing the reference impedances in both networks.

Furthermore, arbitrary weights can be used in both networks.

IV. QUADRUPLES

Such a general multi-mode description is useful in structures exhibiting differential propagation on such as cylindrical shells within a cylindrical shell.

number of sets of four single-ended common modes or any number of conductor antennas are required for each mode.

This however becomes more difficult when single-ended measurements are used to determine the correct modal excitations.

It should be clear that using the standard differential mode sets is very difficult, but requires the more general theory.

The antenna in [11] is a ground plane, fed by two lines, co-located with a folding back the outer conductor shown in Fig. 5.

For the antenna described in Fig. 6 and 7, each mode of the antenna with the indicated polarization.

Microwave Studio[®]. mode 1 and 2 excite only the common mode 3 only the monopole mode 4 a combination thereof.

amplitudes, a combination of modes can therefore be achieved as to the multi-mode case.

Figure 5.28: General mixed-mode network (from [103])

or alternatively as

$$\mathbf{V} = (\mathbf{Z}^{\dagger})^{-\frac{1}{2}} (\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}) \quad (9a)$$

$$\mathbf{I} = (\mathbf{Z}^{\dagger})^{-\frac{1}{2}} (\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}) \quad (9b)$$

any modification. For the combination theory by Ferrero, the port voltages and currents for the differential and common-mode ports of network B are defined as in (27) for k_{ni}^v and k_{ni}^i respectively.

(27) and \mathbf{Z}^{\dagger} is a diagonal matrix containing the characteristic port impedances as shown in (10).

can be derived.

Figure 4. N-port network with differential/common-mode ports and single-ended ports

or alternatively as

$$\mathbf{V} = (\mathbf{Z}^{\dagger})^{-\frac{1}{2}} (\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}) \quad (9a)$$

$$\mathbf{I} = (\mathbf{Z}^{\dagger})^{-\frac{1}{2}} (\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}) \quad (9b)$$

any modification. For the combination theory by Ferrero, the port voltages and currents for the differential and common-mode ports of network B are defined as in (27) for k_{ni}^v and k_{ni}^i respectively.

(27) and \mathbf{Z}^{\dagger} is a diagonal matrix containing the characteristic port impedances as shown in (10).

can be derived.

Figure 5.28: General mixed-mode network (from [103])

or alternatively as

$$\mathbf{V} = (\mathbf{Z}^{\dagger})^{-\frac{1}{2}} (\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}) \quad (9a)$$

$$\mathbf{I} = (\mathbf{Z}^{\dagger})^{-\frac{1}{2}} (\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}) \quad (9b)$$

any modification. For the combination theory by Ferrero, the port voltages and currents for the differential and common-mode ports of network B are defined as in (27) for k_{ni}^v and k_{ni}^i respectively.

(27) and \mathbf{Z}^{\dagger} is a diagonal matrix containing the characteristic port impedances as shown in (10).

can be derived.

Figure 4. N-port network with differential/common-mode ports and single-ended ports

or alternatively as

$$\mathbf{V} = (\mathbf{Z}^{\dagger})^{-\frac{1}{2}} (\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}) \quad (9a)$$

$$\mathbf{I} = (\mathbf{Z}^{\dagger})^{-\frac{1}{2}} (\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}) \quad (9b)$$

any modification. For the combination theory by Ferrero, the port voltages and currents for the differential and common-mode ports of network B are defined as in (27) for k_{ni}^v and k_{ni}^i respectively.

(27) and \mathbf{Z}^{\dagger} is a diagonal matrix containing the characteristic port impedances as shown in (10).

can be derived.

Figure 5.28: General mixed-mode network (from [103])

or alternatively as

$$\mathbf{V} = (\mathbf{Z}^{\dagger})^{-\frac{1}{2}} (\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}) \quad (9a)$$

$$\mathbf{I} = (\mathbf{Z}^{\dagger})^{-\frac{1}{2}} (\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}) \quad (9b)$$

any modification. For the combination theory by Ferrero, the port voltages and currents for the differential and common-mode ports of network B are defined as in (27) for k_{ni}^v and k_{ni}^i respectively.

(27) and \mathbf{Z}^{\dagger} is a diagonal matrix containing the characteristic port impedances as shown in (10).

can be derived.

Figure 4. N-port network with differential/common-mode ports and single-ended ports

or alternatively as

$$\mathbf{V} = (\mathbf{Z}^{\dagger})^{-\frac{1}{2}} (\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}) \quad (9a)$$

$$\mathbf{I} = (\mathbf{Z}^{\dagger})^{-\frac{1}{2}} (\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}) \quad (9b)$$

any modification. For the combination theory by Ferrero, the port voltages and currents for the differential and common-mode ports of network B are defined as in (27) for k_{ni}^v and k_{ni}^i respectively.

(27) and \mathbf{Z}^{\dagger} is a diagonal matrix containing the characteristic port impedances as shown in (10).

can be derived.

Figure 5.28: General mixed-mode network (from [103])

or alternatively as

$$\mathbf{V} = (\mathbf{Z}^{\dagger})^{-\frac{1}{2}} (\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}) \quad (9a)$$

$$\mathbf{I} = (\mathbf{Z}^{\dagger})^{-\frac{1}{2}} (\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}) \quad (9b)$$

any modification. For the combination theory by Ferrero, the port voltages and currents for the differential and common-mode ports of network B are defined as in (27) for k_{ni}^v and k_{ni}^i respectively.

(27) and \mathbf{Z}^{\dagger} is a diagonal matrix containing the characteristic port impedances as shown in (10).

can be derived.

Figure 4. N-port network with differential/common-mode ports and single-ended ports

or alternatively as

$$\mathbf{V} = (\mathbf{Z}^{\dagger})^{-\frac{1}{2}} (\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}) \quad (9a)$$

$$\mathbf{I} = (\mathbf{Z}^{\dagger})^{-\frac{1}{2}} (\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}) \quad (9b)$$

any modification. For the combination theory by Ferrero, the port voltages and currents for the differential and common-mode ports of network B are defined as in (27) for k_{ni}^v and k_{ni}^i respectively.

(27) and \mathbf{Z}^{\dagger} is a diagonal matrix containing the characteristic port impedances as shown in (10).

can be derived

In terms of scattering parameters, $\mathbf{b}^A = \mathbf{S}^A \mathbf{a}^A$ and $\mathbf{b}^B = \mathbf{S}^B \mathbf{a}^B$, and it follows that \mathbf{S}^B can be expressed in terms of \mathbf{S}^A by

$$\mathbf{S}^B = (\mathbf{M}_C + \mathbf{M}_S \mathbf{S}^A) (\mathbf{M}_S + \mathbf{M}_C \mathbf{S}^A)^{-1} \quad (5.4)$$

A very important special case occurs when the port impedances of network B are related to the port impedances of network A by (5.5).

$$\mathbf{Z}^B = \mathbf{K}^v \mathbf{Z}^A (\mathbf{K}^i)^{-1} \quad (5.5)$$

In this case, $\mathbf{M}_C = \mathbf{0}$, and the transformation in (5.4) simply becomes that shown in (5.6).

$$\mathbf{S}^B = \mathbf{M}_S \mathbf{S}^A (\mathbf{M}_S)^{-1} \quad (5.6)$$

where

$$\mathbf{M}_S = (\mathbf{Z}^B)^{-\frac{1}{2}} \mathbf{K}^v (\mathbf{Z}^A)^{\frac{1}{2}} \quad (5.7)$$

Note that this special case is the one most widely used for the transformation of single-ended S-parameters to mixed-mode S-parameters, often erroneously. The new formulation thus removed the restriction, and allowed for arbitrary impedances. In practice, the choosing of port impedances also allow for multi-line coupled-line networks to be used. A general example of transforming single-ended S-parameters to a mixed-mode set is shown in Fig. 5.28, where the mixed-mode network consists of differential ports, common-mode ports, and single-ended ports.

Figs. 5.29 and 5.30 show the effect of using this transformation on the four radiation modes of the quadraxial line feed of the QMA. In Fig. 5.29, each line of the quadraxial line is excited in turn, with the other three terminated, giving four single-ended radiation patterns. When transformed to four modal excitations, the patterns in Fig. 5.30 result.

This transformation of radiation patterns was used to experimentally verify various QMA's. As it is virtually impossible to apply modal excitations in a practical measurement setup, the antennas were measured using single-ended excitations on each conductor of the quadraxial line successively, and the full set of measurements could then be transformed to the modal case, and compared to the theoretical modal patterns. An example for one QMA is shown in Fig. 5.31.

5.4.7 General Scattering Parameter transformations applied to multi-conductor lines

The General Scattering Parameter transformation, once developed, was a promising technique to apply to networks. Multi-conductor transmission lines especially have been the focus of many modelling algorithms, as it forms part

$$\vec{F}^{MM} = \begin{bmatrix} f_1^{MM}(\theta, \phi) \\ \vdots \\ f_N^{MM}(\theta, \phi) \end{bmatrix} = [\mathbf{M}_S + \mathbf{M}_C \mathbf{S}^{SE}] \vec{F}^{SE} \quad (40)$$

From these fields, the gain of the antenna for each multi-mode excitation can be calculated. Using the same simulated example as in section IV, the radiated electric far-fields for the four single-ended excitations are shown in Fig. 10, with the transformed multi-mode far-fields in Fig. 11.

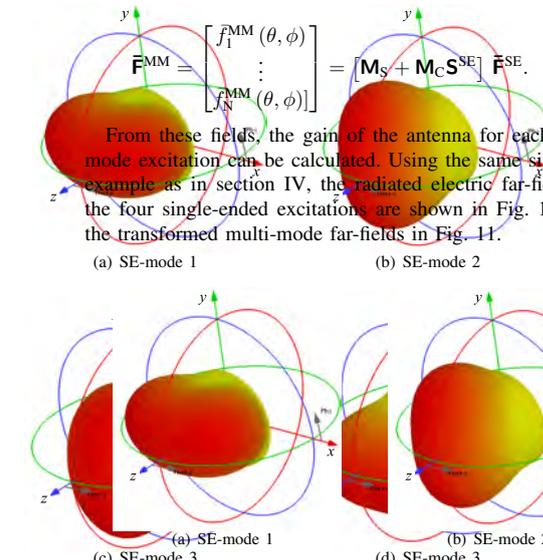


Figure 10. Single-ended electric far-field distributions for the four transformed excitations. Again, a variety of microwave research fields, including signal integrity, port modeling, and cross-talk. In terms of the application to scattering parameters, this allows excitations to be calculated from a single set of (5.6) far-fields without redoing the full electromagnetic analysis in this case. It is however of even more importance, as antenna simulations are normally quite computationally intensive. The transformation also makes it possible to determine the multi-mode far-fields of the antenna from a set of single-ended measurements, treating a system of coupled antennas. To show this, the procedure was also applied to the measurement of a manufactured quad-mode antenna shown in Fig. 14, which is a four-port structure. The results, as with the S-parameters, the proposed transformation gives exactly the correct results. As with the S-parameters, the proposed transformation allows the calculation of multi-mode far-fields from a single-ended excitation to be calculated from a single set of single-ended measurements, without redoing the full electromagnetic analysis. Here, graphs denoted as CST are the direct CST idealities in the manufactured antenna, whilst the CST time-domain analysis using the fundamental modes, which are calculated using single-ended excitations, to obtain the mixed-mode S-parameters, both the simple and the full transformation, are calculated and then compared with the simulated results from CST. In Fig. 2.35, the simple transformation was shown to be very close to the full transformation, giving very close results, while the full transformation gives exactly the correct results.

It should be noted that, for each of the four fundamental modes. Here, graphs denoted as CST are the direct CST results for an ideal antenna, while the measured results are for a manufactured antenna, which is not an ideal antenna. The measured results are of course affected by any non-idealities in the manufactured antenna, whilst the CST results are for an ideal antenna. The measured results are of course affected by any non-idealities in the manufactured antenna, whilst the CST results are for an ideal antenna.

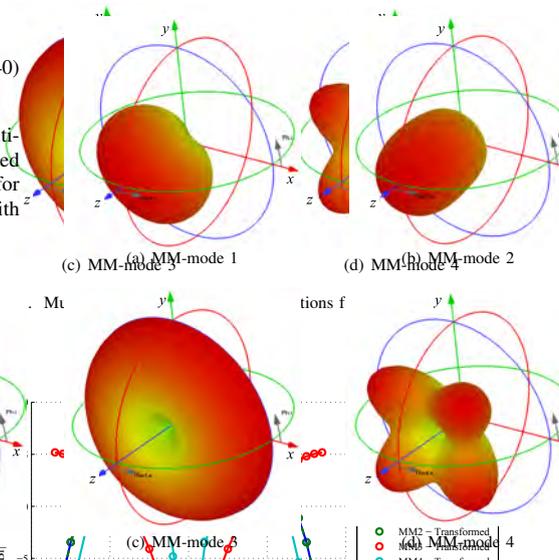
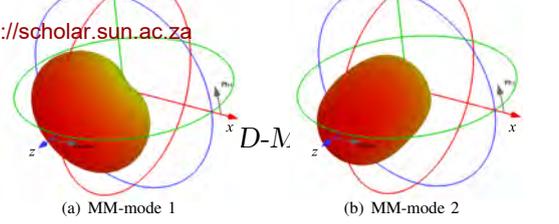
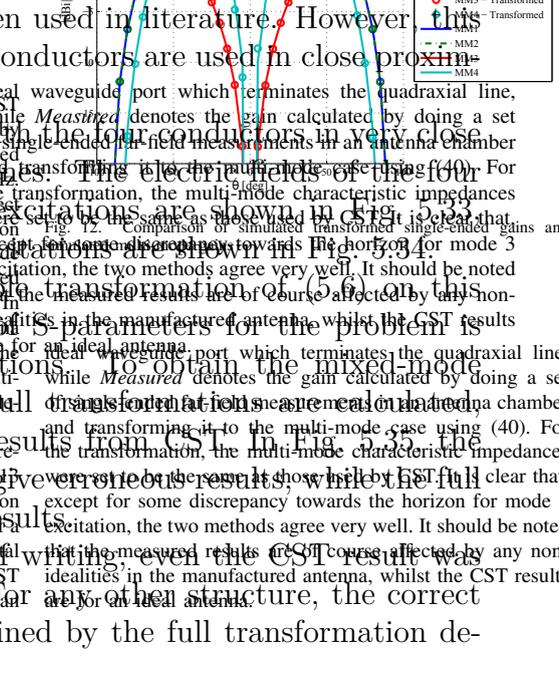


Figure 11. Multi-mode electric far-field distributions for port modes 1-4. Figure 5.30: Modal radiation patterns (from [103]).



Using these transformations, one needs only perform one set of analyses of a structure, using single-ended port excitations. The S-parameters of any other combination of excitations can then simply be calculated using the transformation, instead of a new set of analyses. In such a way, a set of excitations

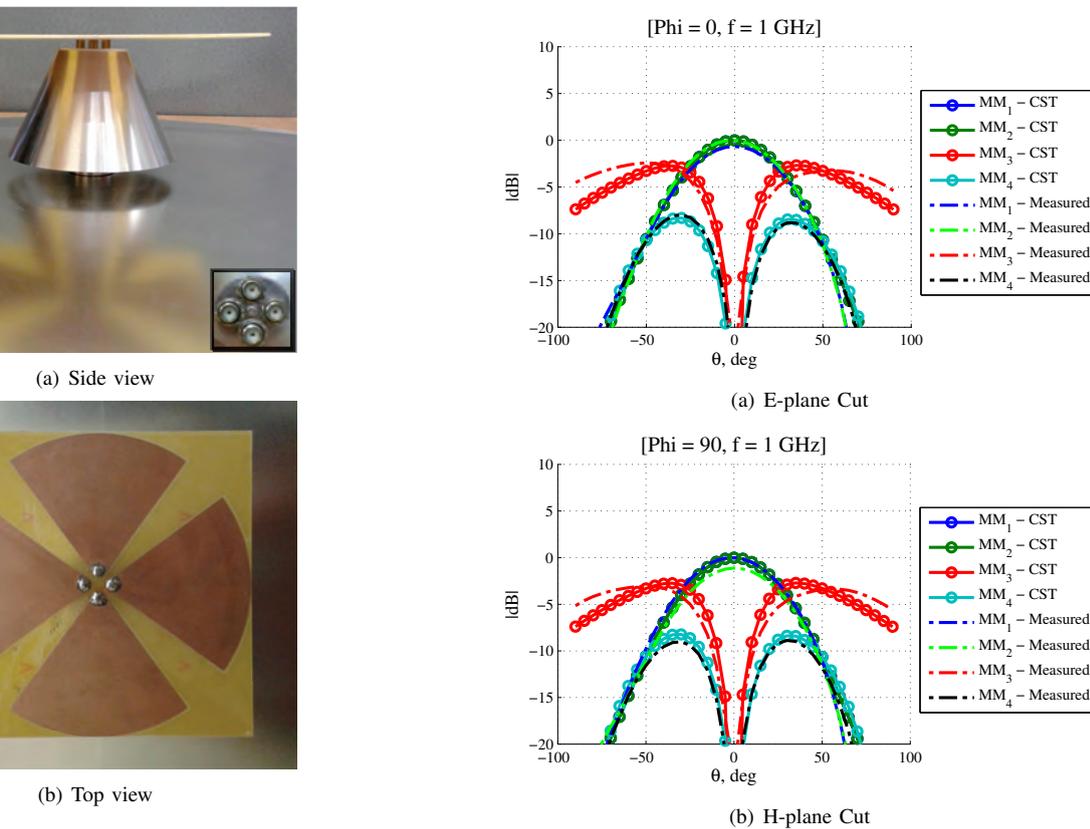


Figure 5.31: Transformed measured pattern cuts (from [103])

IONS AND RECOMMENDATIONS

is a general technique to transform S-parameters of a single antenna into a set of multi-mode S-parameters. This is done by optimising the transformation constants, instead of running full-wave optimisations of the antenna structure. The inverse procedure is also possible and can be used to good effect to calculate the far-field patterns of a multi-mode antenna from a single set of S-parameters. This is done by optimising the transformation constants, instead of running full-wave optimisations of the antenna structure. The inverse procedure is also possible and can be used to good effect to calculate the far-field patterns of a multi-mode antenna from a single set of S-parameters. This is done by optimising the transformation constants, instead of running full-wave optimisations of the antenna structure.

[3] A. Ferrero, M. Pirola, "Generalized mixed-mode S-parameters", *IEEE Trans. Microwave Theory Tech.*, vol. 54, no. 1, Jan. 1995, pp. 458-463.

[4] A. Huynh, B. Hakobsson, and S. Gong, "Mixed-mode S-parameter conversion for networks with coupled differential signals," *Proc. 37th European Microwave Conference*, 2007, pp. 238-241.

[5] S.G. Hay and J.D. O'Sullivan, "Analysis of common-mode effects in a dual-polarized planar connected-array antenna," *Radio Science*, vol. 43, no. 3, pp. 450-459, 2008.

[6] J.J. Pantoja, N.M. Pea, F. Roman, F. Vega and F. Rachidi, "Wideband Experimental Characterization of Differential Antennas," *8th European Conf. on Antennas and Propagation (EuCAP)*, April 2014, pp. 2131-2139.

[7] S. Liao, Q. Xue, and J. Xu, "A Differentially Fed Magneto-Electric Dipole Antenna with a Simple Structure," *IEEE Antennas and Propagation Magazine*, Vol. 52, No. 5, October 2010, pp. 10-17.

[8] K. Kinoshita and N. Ishii, "One-port measurement for coupling between two antennas," *Proc. 2014 IEEE International Workshop on Electromagnetics*, Aug. 2014, Sapporo, Hokkaido, Japan, pp. 70-71.

[9] D.S. Prinsloo, P. Meyer, R. Maaskant, and M. Ivashina, "Design of an active dual-mode antenna with near hemispherical field of view coverage," *Proc. Conf. on Electromagnetics in Advanced Applications (ICEAA)*, Sep. 2013, pp. 1064-1067.

[10] D.S. Prinsloo, R. Maaskant, M.V. Ivashina, and P. Meyer, "Mixed-mode analysis for dual-mode excited modes and receiving antenna providing near-hemispherical field-of-view coverage," *IEEE Trans. Antennas and Propagation*, vol. 62, no. 8, August 2014, pp. 3951-3961.

[11] D.S. Prinsloo, P. Meyer, M.V. Ivashina, and R. Maaskant, "A quad-mode antenna for accurate polarimetric measurements over an ultra-wide field-of-view," *8th European Conf. on Antennas and Propagation (EuCAP)*, April 2014, pp. 3794-3797.

[12] K. Kurokawa, "Power waves and the Scattering matrix" *IEEE Trans. Microwave Theory Tech.*, vol. MTT-13, no. 3, pp. 194-202, Mar. 1965.

[13] T.S. Beukman, M. Ivashina, R. Maaskant, P. Meyer, C. Bencivenni, "A quadraxial feed for ultra-wide bandwidth quadruple-ridged flared

ACKNOWLEDGMENT

This work is supported by the South African Science and Technology

REFERENCES

[1] Eisenstadt, "Combined differential and common-mode S-parameters: theory and simulation," *IEEE Trans. Microwave Theory Tech.*, vol. 43, no. 7, Jul. 1995, pp. 1530-1539.

[2] Eisenstadt, "Pure-Mode Network Analyzer for Extraction of Multi-Mode S-Parameters of Differential Antennas," *IEEE Trans. Microwave Theory Tech.*, vol. 45, no. 7, Jul. 1997, pp. 1151-1159.

$$\begin{bmatrix} k_{11}^{iN} & \dots & k_{1N}^{iN} \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ k_{N1}^{iN} & \dots & k_{NN}^{iN} \end{bmatrix}$$

ist be related by (5), with \mathcal{I}_N denoting the identity matrix, for conservation of power under time reversal is guaranteed.

$$\mathbf{K}^{v\dagger} \mathbf{K}^i = \mathcal{I}_N \quad (5)$$

and waves at each port of both networks are related to the port voltage and current at that port by definitions by Kurokawa for real ports

$$\mathbf{Z}^{\mathbf{A},\mathbf{B}} \frac{1}{2} (\mathbf{a}^{\mathbf{A},\mathbf{B}} + \mathbf{b}^{\mathbf{A},\mathbf{B}}) \quad (6a)$$

$$\mathbf{Z}^{\mathbf{A},\mathbf{B}} \frac{1}{2} (\mathbf{a}^{\mathbf{A},\mathbf{B}} - \mathbf{b}^{\mathbf{A},\mathbf{B}}) \quad (6b)$$

matrices containing the incident and reflected waves are related to the port voltages and currents as shown in (7).

$$\begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{Z}_1^{\mathbf{A},\mathbf{B}} & \dots & 0 \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & \dots & \mathbf{Z}_N^{\mathbf{A},\mathbf{B}} \end{bmatrix} \quad (7)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{Z}^{\mathbf{A}} \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2} (\mathbf{Z}^{\mathbf{B}})^{\frac{1}{2}} \mathbf{K}^i (\mathbf{Z}^{\mathbf{A}})^{\frac{1}{2}} \\ \mathbf{Z}^{\mathbf{A}} \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2} (\mathbf{Z}^{\mathbf{B}})^{\frac{1}{2}} \mathbf{K}^i (\mathbf{Z}^{\mathbf{A}})^{\frac{1}{2}} \end{aligned}$$

waves of network B can be related to the waves of network A by (9a) and (9b).

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{a}^{\mathbf{B}} &= \mathbf{M}_S \mathbf{a}^{\mathbf{A}} + \mathbf{M}_C \mathbf{b}^{\mathbf{A}} \\ \mathbf{b}^{\mathbf{B}} &= \mathbf{M}_C \mathbf{a}^{\mathbf{A}} + \mathbf{M}_S \mathbf{b}^{\mathbf{A}} \end{aligned}$$

Stellenbosch University <https://scholar.sun.ac.za>
cylinder is inserted in the centre of the cylinder, as shown in Fig. 5.32. The dielectric disc has a radius of 0.5mm, and is positioned with an axial symmetry, at a distance of 1.414mm from the centre. The dielectric disc has a permittivity of 20, and is 1mm in thick

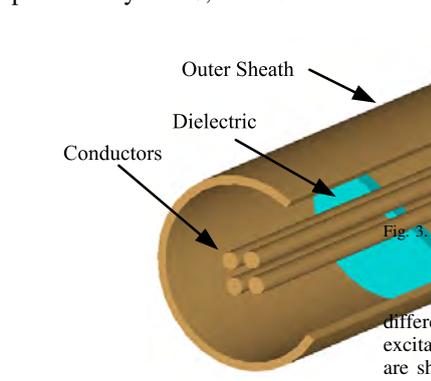


Fig. 5.32: Four-conductor transmission line (from [104])

As a first step, the network is analyzed using four single-ended excitations at each port as shown in Fig. 3 for one port. The four port modes established in this way at each port are shown in Fig. 3. Such an analysis can readily be extended to multi-pin feed, with a factor of two for each port. The port impedances for each port are shown in Table 5.33 in the form of $\mathbf{Z}^{\mathbf{SE}}$ and $\mathbf{Z}^{\mathbf{MM}}$ impedances.

From the resulting single-ended S-matrix, definitions of differential and common-mode impedances can be obtained as discussed in Section 5.4.8. The S-matrix can be constructed as excited in (15)

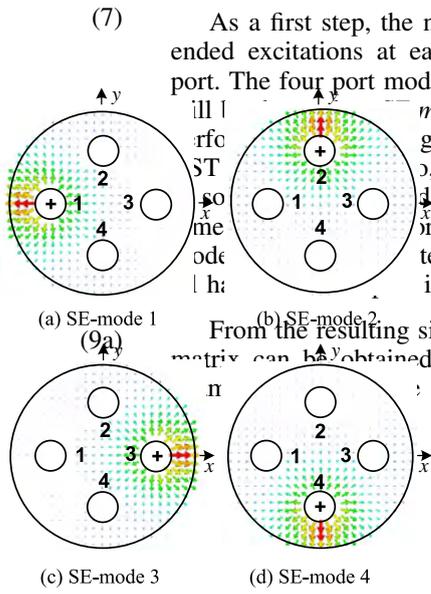


Fig. 5.33: Single-ended field distributions for port modes 1-4
Figure 5.33: Single-ended port electric fields (from [104])

differential and common-mode excitations at each port. These excitations as well as their respective electric field distributions are shown in Fig. 4 and denoted as *MM-modes*. To calculate the MM S-matrix, any set of port impedances can in principle be used. However, as we would like to verify the transformed result using CST, the port impedance calculated for each MM-mode by a fast two-dimensional analysis is used. For this analysis, each mode of the set is excited using a multi-pin feed with the indicated polarity.

5.4.8 Assessment

The 2014 paper [90] holds special significance for me as it marked my first move into the antenna world. It also made me working on microwave MM-modes. It also made use of concepts from

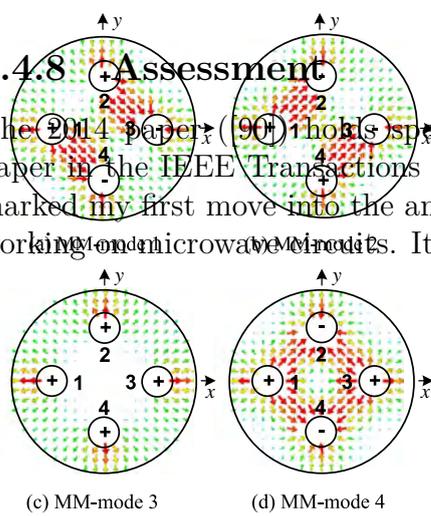


Fig. 4. Multi-mode field distributions for port modes 1-4

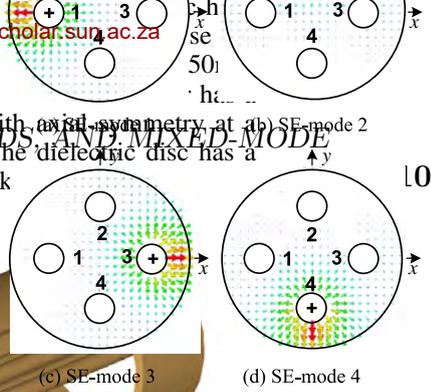


Fig. 4. Multi-mode field distributions for port modes 1-4

differential and common-mode excitations at each port. These excitations as well as their respective electric field distributions are shown in Fig. 4 and denoted as *MM-modes*. To calculate the MM S-matrix, any set of port impedances can in principle be used. However, as we would like to verify the transformed result using CST, the port impedance calculated for each MM-mode by a fast two-dimensional analysis in CST is used. For this analysis, each mode of the set is excited using a multi-pin feed with the indicated polarity.

From the two-dimensional CST analysis, and with the single-ended multi-pin feed, the port impedances for each MM-mode are shown in Table 5.34 in the form of $\mathbf{Z}^{\mathbf{SE}}$ and $\mathbf{Z}^{\mathbf{MM}}$ impedances.

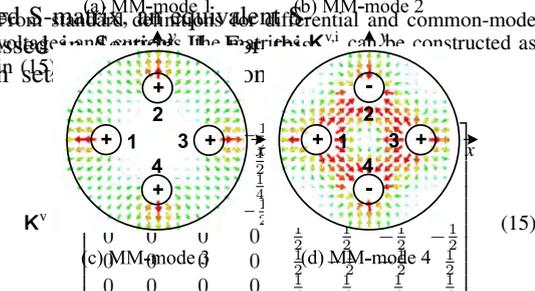


Fig. 5.34: Mixed-mode port electric fields (from [104])

$$\mathbf{K}^v = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} & 0 & 0 \\ \frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} \\ 0 & 0 & \frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\mathbf{K}^i = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} & 0 & 0 \\ \frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} \\ 0 & 0 & \frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} \end{bmatrix}$$

As this example is used to illustrate the technique, the transformed S-matrix is compared to a full CST analysis of the structure, this time excited by the four multi-mode excitations shown in Fig. 4. Fig. 5 shows the comparison for port 2 short-circuited, and Fig. 6 for the results when both ports are used. In both cases, the main subscript refers to the port number, and the subscript in the main text refers to the mode. It is clear that the transformation produces the same results as the full CST analysis, with the very small deviations due to the way CST calculates impedances.

As the standard transformation in (12) is very widely used in literature and in software, it is important to point out the error made when using it when coupled lines are present at the port planes. Fig. 7 shows the same S-parameters as in Fig 6, but using the simple standard transformation. It is clear that significant errors are incurred.

While only illustrated with simulation, the same procedure can be applied for practical measurements. In the case of this example, it would imply that for each measurement, a transmission line with characteristic impedance equal to the single-ended impedance of that line is used to excite each

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{Z}^{\mathbf{SE}} &= \text{diag}(125, 125, 50, 50) \\ \mathbf{Z}^{\mathbf{MM}} &= \text{diag}(66.9, 66.9, 50, 50) \end{aligned}$$

From standard definitions of port voltages and currents, the S-matrix is calculated in (15) and (16).

$$\mathbf{K}^v = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} & 0 & 0 \\ \frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} \\ 0 & 0 & \frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\mathbf{K}^i = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} & 0 & 0 \\ \frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} \\ 0 & 0 & \frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} \end{bmatrix}$$

As before, $\mathbf{K}^i = (\mathbf{K}^v)^{-1}$, therefore $\mathbf{K}^v \mathbf{Z}^{\mathbf{SE}} (\mathbf{K}^i)^{-1}$, therefore can be used.

As this example is used to illustrate the technique, the transformed S-matrix is compared to a full CST analysis of the structure, this time excited by the four multi-mode excitations shown in Fig. 4. Fig. 5 shows the comparison for port 2 short-circuited, and Fig. 6 for the results when both ports are used. In both cases, the main subscript refers to the port number, and the subscript in the main text refers to the mode. It is clear that the transformation produces the same results as the full CST analysis, with the very small deviations due to the way CST calculates impedances.

As the standard transformation in (12) is very widely used in literature and in software, it is important to point out the error made when using it when coupled lines are present at the port planes. Fig. 7 shows the same S-parameters as in Fig 6, but using the simple standard transformation. It is clear that significant errors are incurred.

While only illustrated with simulation, the same procedure can be applied for practical measurements. In the case of this example, it would imply that for each measurement, a transmission line with characteristic impedance equal to the single-ended impedance of that line is used to excite each

CHAPTER 5. ANTENNAS, ANTENNA FEEDS, AND MIXED-MODE FORMULATIONS

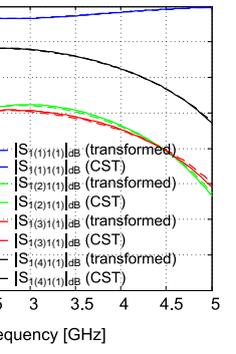


Figure 5.35: Comparison of simulated transformed single-ended S-parameters and simulated multi-mode S-parameters for port 2 shorted

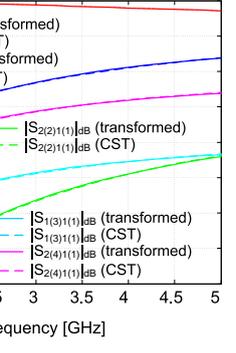


Figure 5.36: Comparison of simulated transformed single-ended S-parameters and simulated multi-mode S-parameters using full transformation (from [104])

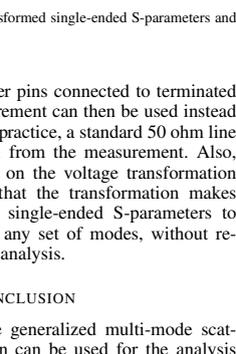


Figure 5.37: Comparison of simulated transformed single-ended S-parameters and simulated multi-mode S-parameters using simple transformation (from [104])

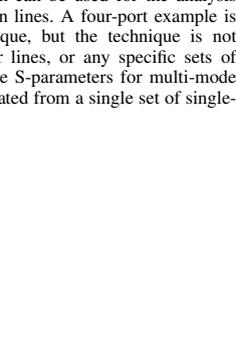


Figure 5.38: Comparison of simulated transformed single-ended S-parameters and simulated multi-mode S-parameters using simple transformation (from [104])

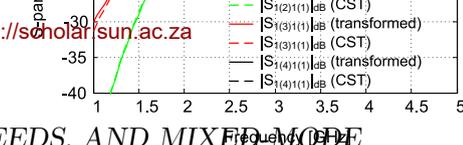


Figure 5: Comparison of simulated transformed single-ended S-parameters and simulated multi-mode S-parameters for port 2 shorted

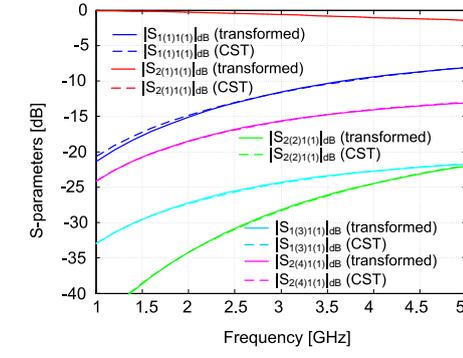


Figure 6: Comparison of simulated transformed single-ended S-parameters and simulated multi-mode S-parameters using full transformation (from [104])

pin separately, with all the other pins connected to terminated transmission lines. This measurement can then be used instead of the single-mode analysis. In practice, a standard 50 ohm line can be used and de-embedded from the measurement. Also, as no restrictions were placed on the voltage transformation matrix it should be evident that the transformation makes one set of single-ended S-parameters to parameters for any set of modes, without re-magnetic analysis.

IV. CONCLUSION

How the generalized multi-mode scattering transformation can be used for the analysis of transmission lines. A four-port example is used to illustrate the technique, but the technique is not limited to four conductors or lines, or any specific sets of modes. It is shown that the S-parameters for multi-mode analysis can be calculated from a single set of single-

ACKNOWLEDGMENT

The authors thank CST for providing software and support, as well as the NRF for financial assistance.

REFERENCES

- [1] D. Bockelman and W. Eisenstadt, "Combined differential-mode scattering parameters: theory and simulation," *crowave Theory Tech.*, vol. 43, no. 7, Jul. 1995, pp. 1064-1067.
- [2] P. Meyer and D. Prinsloo, "Generalized Multi-Mode Scattering Parameters and Antenna Far-Field Conversions," *IEEE Trc Propagation*, submitted December 2014.
- [3] A. Huynh, P. Hakansson, and S. Gong, "Mixed-mode conversion for networks with coupled differential signals," *European Microwave Conference*, Munich, Oct. 2007.
- [4] D. Prinsloo, P. Meyer, R. Maaskant, and M. Ivashina, "An active dual-mode antenna with near hemispherical coverage," *Int. Conf. on Electromagnetics in Advances* (ICEAA), Sep. 2013, pp. 1064-1067.
- [5] D. Prinsloo, P. Meyer, M.V. Ivashina, and R. Maaskant, "A dual-mode antenna for accurate polarimetric measurement wide field-of-view," *8th European Conf. on Antennas (EuCAP)*, April 2014, pp. 3794-3797.
- [6] T.S. Beukman, M. Ivashina, R. Maaskant, P. Meyer, C. Bencivenni, "A quadraxial feed for ultra-wide bandwidth quadruple-ridged flared horn antennas," *8th European Conference on Antennas and Propagation (EuCAP 2014)*, The Hague, The Netherlands, April 2014, pp. 3794-3797.
- [7] D. Prinsloo, R. Maaskant, M.V. Ivashina, and P. Meyer, "Mixed-mode sensitivity analysis of a combined differential and common mode active receiving antenna providing near-hemispherical field-of-view coverage," *IEEE Trans. Antennas and Propagation*, vol. 61, no. 8, pp. 3951-3961, Aug. 2013.

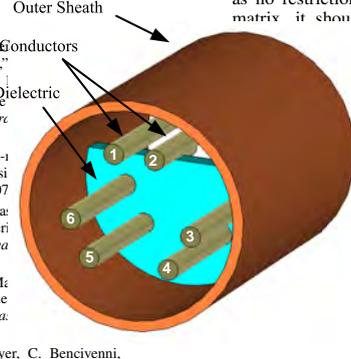


Figure 3: Six conductor transmission line (from [105])

An infinite number of sets of S-parameters can be calculated for this structure. For the purposes of this paper, only two will be shown. Firstly, each conductor can be excited at each of its ports, with all the others terminated in 50 ohm loads. Such an analysis can readily be performed using single-ended S-parameters. In addition, it is possible to excite the structure with a fast two-dimensional analysis. The work also pertains to an analysis of a different nature, which was a milestone of a different nature.

I believe the work itself established and developed a number of concepts which have not been covered by the literature. The work is not only a milestone in the class of multi-mode antennas, and multi-mode networks. Especially the improved reciprocity and symmetry in the longitudinal direction, the dielectric disc reduces the number of symmetries in the transverse plane.

Using the generalized multi-mode S-parameter transformation, various other sets of S-parameters would be computed from the single-ended set, without any additional computational cost. Only the QMNA, but any antenna or system making use of multiple sets of excitations.

From the two-dimensional CST analysis, and with the single-ended case represented by network A (denoted *SE*) and the multi-mode case by network B (denoted *MM*), the impedance matrices necessary for the transformation in (10) are shown in (14).

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{Z}^{SE} &= \text{diag} (50) \\ \mathbf{Z}^{MM} &= \text{diag} (138, 138, 138, 138, 138, 138, 70, 70, 70, 70, 70, 70) \end{aligned} \quad (14)$$

From standard definitions for differential and common-mode voltages and currents, the matrices

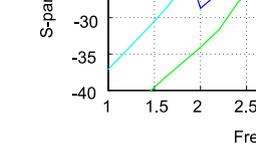


Figure 7: Comparison of simulated transformed single-ended S-parameters and simulated multi-mode S-parameters for port 2 shorted

ACKNOWLEDGMENT

The authors thank CST for providing software and support, as well as the NRF for financial assistance.

REFERENCES

- [1] D. Bockelman and W. Eisenstadt, "Combined differential-mode scattering parameters: theory and simulation," *crowave Theory Tech.*, vol. 43, no. 7, Jul. 1995, pp. 1064-1067.
- [2] P. Meyer and D. Prinsloo, "Generalized Multi-Mode Scattering Parameters and Antenna Far-Field Conversions," *IEEE Trc Propagation*, submitted December 2014.
- [3] A. Huynh, P. Hakansson, and S. Gong, "Mixed-mode conversion for networks with coupled differential signals," *European Microwave Conference*, Munich, Oct. 2007.
- [4] D. Prinsloo, P. Meyer, R. Maaskant, and M. Ivashina, "An active dual-mode antenna with near hemispherical coverage," *Int. Conf. on Electromagnetics in Advances (ICEAA)*, Sep. 2013, pp. 1064-1067.
- [5] D. Prinsloo, P. Meyer, M.V. Ivashina, and R. Maaskant, "A dual-mode antenna for accurate polarimetric measurement wide field-of-view," *8th European Conf. on Antennas (EuCAP)*, April 2014, pp. 3794-3797.
- [6] T.S. Beukman, M. Ivashina, R. Maaskant, P. Meyer, C. Bencivenni, "A quadraxial feed for ultra-wide bandwidth quadruple-ridged flared horn antennas," *8th European Conference on Antennas and Propagation (EuCAP 2014)*, The Hague, The Netherlands, April 2014, pp. 3794-3797.
- [7] D. Prinsloo, R. Maaskant, M.V. Ivashina, and P. Meyer, "Mixed-mode sensitivity analysis of a combined differential and common mode active receiving antenna providing near-hemispherical field-of-view coverage," *IEEE Trans. Antennas and Propagation*, vol. 61, no. 8, pp. 3951-3961, Aug. 2013.
- [8] K. Kurokawa, "Power waves in linear networks," *Microwave Theory Tech.*, vol. MTT-10, pp. 190-193, 1962.

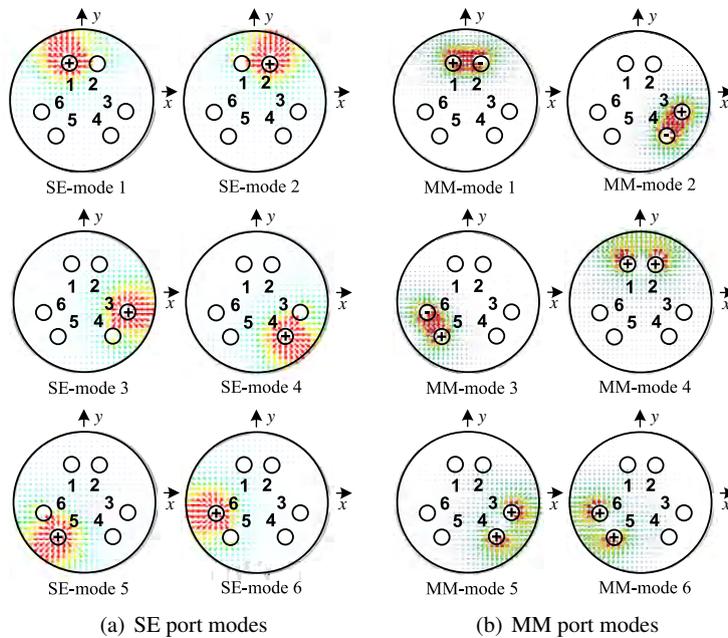


Figure 3: Electric field distributions for port modes
Figure 5.38: Six conductor transmission line port electric fields (from [105])

Petrie Meyer

$\mathbf{K}^{v,1}$ can be constructed as in (15)

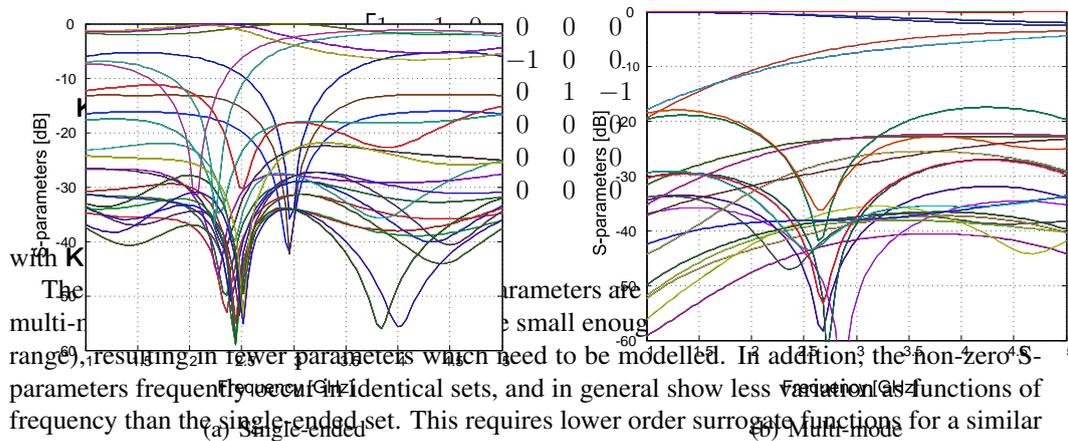


Figure 4: Single-ended and multi-mode S-parameters
Figure 5.39: Six conductor transmission line S-parameters (from [105])

The given multi-mode set is of course only one example, and in general, each problem can be analyzed in order to find the optimum transformation matrix which will result in the smallest \mathbf{K} -parameters.

CONCLUSION

This paper has presented a multi-conductor scattering parameter transformation technique that can be used to reduce the required number and order of modelling functions required to create an accurate surrogate model. A twelve-port, six-mode transmission problem is used here as an example, but the technique is not limited to specific numbers of lines or ports. Specific sets of excitations and Rob Maaskant at Chalmers University, start work on the other main SKA topic, that of very wideband waveguide feeds for reflector antennas

ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

The authors thank CST for providing software and support.

REFERENCES

[1] P. Meyer, D.S. Prinsloo, Generalized Multi-Mode Scattering Parameter and Antenna Far-Field Conversions. *IEEE Trans. Antennas and Propagation*, **63**, 4815-4825, 2015.
 [2] P. Meyer, Multi-Conductor Transmission Line Analysis Using the Generalized Multi-Mode S-parameter Transformation. *19th IEEE Workshop on Signal and Power Integrity (SPI-2015)*, Berlin, Germany, March 2015.

[106].

For radio astronomy, bandwidth is normally of very high importance, and for the SKA a frequency range of 1-20 GHz is envisaged for the reflector array. This is an exceedingly complex problem, as not only does the input reflection match have to be sufficiently good over a 1:20 bandwidth, but the illumination of the reflector has to ideally be constant in terms of beam width and phase centre over this whole band. The *quadruple-ridged flared horn (QRFH)* antenna is one of the best candidates to achieve bandwidths approaching this, as it offers unique abilities to control the beamwidth over very wide frequency ranges, using combinations of higher order waveguide modes at the feed aperture. The control of these modes is however very difficult, and most QRFH antennas

Quadruple-Ridged Flared Horn Antenna

The basic structure of a QRFH is shown in Fig. 5.40, with a cross-section of the horn in Fig. 5.41. The design procedure at Stellenbosch University is approximated the flare curve using exponential curves, and simply optimised the

to produce a desired aperture field distribution. An example is presented which produces a horn with improved efficiency over a 6:1 bandwidth. The profile of this taper is shown in Fig. 1.

1 INTRODUCTION

The widely used approach for designing a quadruple-ridged flared horn (QRFH) is to employ simple analytical functions for the tapering of the ridge and sidewall profiles in the flared section of the horn [1]. A search function is typically used to find an optimal solution for the parameters of these tapering profile functions [2]. This approach is not only very time consuming but it does not necessarily provide an optimal geometry for the radiating

Fig. 1. Cross-section of a quadruple-ridged flared horn antenna with the quadraxial feed.

Figure 5.40: QRFH structure (from [108])

in synthesizing smooth wall and corrugated horns [3]. Attempting to apply this approach to the centre conductor connected to a corresponding ridge. The design of ridged waveguide structures is however quite complex, due to a number of factors. Firstly, the QRFHs illustrated in the inset of Fig. 2(a). The centre conductors are unfortunately extended in pairs, the four quadraxial ridges are present, though numerical solutions for a quadruple-ridged waveguide have been reported. This work was undertaken by my do. Villiers and my colleague Prof. Keith

However, the results in a very long structure are not as good as those in a shorter structure. This is established by exciting a single pair of pins at the feed. The results in a longer structure are very difficult to extend to two polarisations [11]. There are a few considerations that need to be taken into account when designing a quadruple-ridged horn. The aperture field modal content, and the design of the structure in terms of optimisation. In the initial phase, the

Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering, Stellenbosch University, Stellenbosch, South Africa, e-mail: theunis.beukman@gmail.com; pmeyer@sun.ac.za; ddv@sun.ac.za.

†Department of Signals and Systems, Chalmers University of Technology, Gothenburg, Sweden, e-mail: marianna.ivashina@chalmers.se and rob.maaskant@chalmers.se.

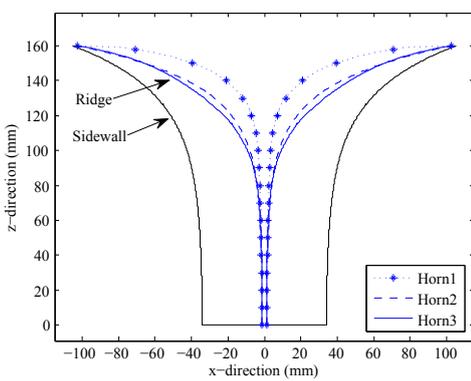


Figure 5.41: Cross-section of flared ridges (from [108])

2 STRATEGY FOR THE SYNTHESIS

actually an extension of a standard. The aim of this work is to develop an ultra-wide waveguide, using an novel offset axial post-Gregorian (OG) reflector antennas proposed for SKA [5]. The specific system used here has a F/D ratio of 0.95 with the main and sub-reflectors. The classical flared EHF horn was

The design presented here has as specific goals a high aperture efficiency (above 50%) and an acceptable input impedance match in order to maximize philosophy centred on the control of the aperture field modal content, and the design of the structure in terms of optimisation. In the initial phase, the

The optimal pattern is used as a reference for the design performance at all frequencies over the operational bandwidth of 2 to 12 GHz. At each frequency the coefficients of all the cylindrical modes above cut-off are calculated for an aperture diam-

problem of the coaxial-to-waveguide transition was addressed. In standard QRFH-antennas, this is done by running a very thin coaxial line cross-wise through one of the (thin) ridges, and extending the centre conductor across the gap, as shown in Fig. 5.42(b). Such a transition however generates multiple modes right at the base of the horn, requiring the control of all these modes throughout the whole length of the horn. To solve this problem, the structure in Fig. 5.42(a) was proposed [107], [112]. This structure used a novel *quadraxial feed*, where a four-line transmission line (a quadraxial line) feeds directly via four lines into each of the four ridges.

The advantage of the quadraxial feed is that a very pure single-mode excitation can be applied by simply exciting the four pins correctly. The effect of this is quite dramatic, as shown in Fig. 5.43, where Fig. 5.43(a) shows the magnitudes of the modes excited at the base of the horn using the conventional feed, with Fig. 5.43(b) showing the same when the quadraxial feed is used. It is evident that, especially at higher frequencies, the quadraxial feed generates significantly fewer modes. In this first paper, the aim was to simply create a pure TE_{11} -mode, which was shown to give a significantly better beamwidth performance over frequency. A follow-up paper presented a very simple circuit model for the proposed quadraxial feed, which made it possible to design such a feed without numerical electromagnetic analysis [113].

Once a way was established to guarantee an almost pure TE_{11} -mode at the base of the horn, the design of the tapered section of the horn could be addressed. This was performed in two steps: firstly, the aperture plane modal content which would produce a desired illumination pattern was calculated using the procedure by Ludwig, and secondly, the taper is designed to generate these modes. This procedure was presented in [108].

Fig. 5.44 show the relative TE -mode magnitudes which will produce an optimal aperture field over frequency for a feed intended to work in an unshaped offset Gregorian system, with an F/D ratio of 0.55, and main and sub-reflectors having diameters of 15m and 5m respectively. The difference between the required relative magnitude of the TE_{11} -mode at low and high frequencies is quite substantial, requiring careful control. To achieve such a control, a taper design based on the cut-off frequencies of the different modes at various points in the taper were used as design parameters, where it is assumed that a mode below cut-off does not contribute to the aperture field. An example for three different horns is shown in Fig. 5.45.

The full technique was presented for a possible solution to the SKA Phase 2 antennas in 2016 in an IEEE Transactions paper [114]. The manufactured prototype is shown in Figs. 5.46 and 5.47, where Fig. 5.46 shows the whole structure, milled from Aluminium, and Fig. 5.47 the quadraxial feed and the transition to four coaxial ports. This design included a number of improvements, including a stepped outside cylinder at the base of the horn to improve matching.

The measured results are shown in Figs. 5.48 and 5.49. A significant im-

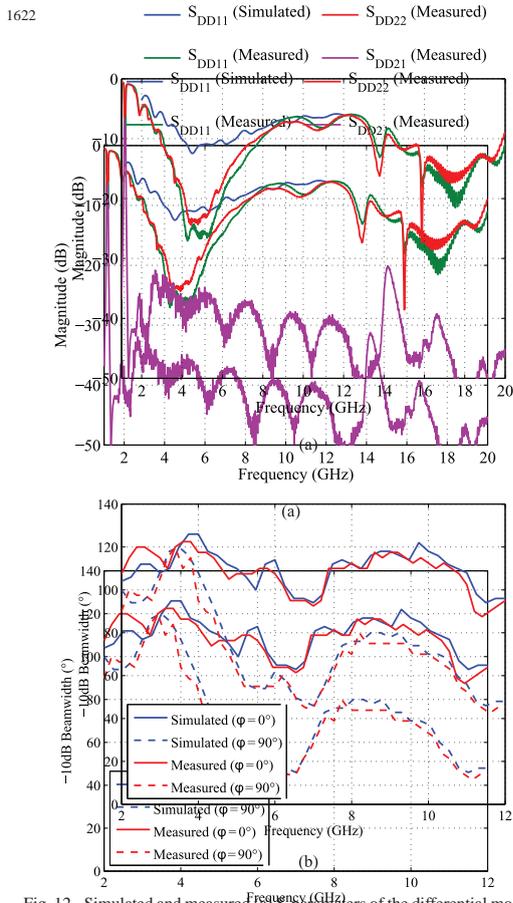


Fig. 12. Simulated and measured (a) S-parameters of the differential mode; and (b) the -10 -dB beamwidths in the E- and H-planes.

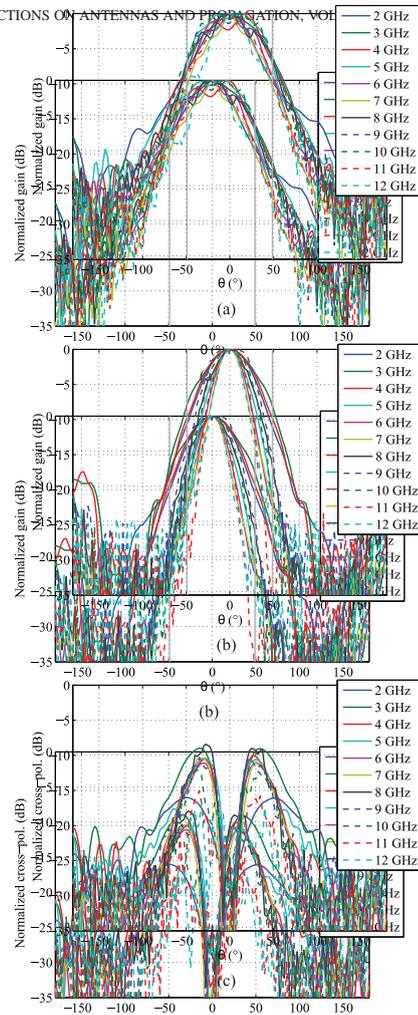


Fig. 13. Measured far-field patterns are shown from 2 to 12 GHz. The copolar results are given for the (a) E-plane and (b) H-plane cuts, while the cross-polar results are given for the (c) $\phi = 45^\circ$ plane.

Figure 5.48: Measured results of the QRFH prototype (a) S-parameters of the differential mode and (b) the far-field radiation of the manufactured prototype was measured in an anechoic chamber using a probe antenna. In Fig. 12(a), the -10 -dB beamwidth results are shown for the E- and H-planes, where it is clear that the measured results are slightly narrower than the simulated results. In Fig. 12(b), the -10 -dB beamwidth results are shown for the E- and H-planes, where it is clear that the measured results then maintains a near-constant difference over the rest of the band, with an overall elliptic shape. The measured far-field patterns are given in Fig. 13 for different cut planes across the frequency range. It is clear that no breakup of the main beam occurs in either of the principle planes, even at the highest frequencies. This is due to the careful control of the modal content in the horn back, however, it is evident that at the higher frequencies, even at the normally problematic higher frequencies, of the horn. The normalized cross-polarization patterns in the $\phi = 45^\circ$ are given in Fig. 13(c). Note that the measured cross-polarization levels are slightly lower than in the simulated results, due to the difficulty in positioning the horn with a 45° orientation with respect to the probe antenna.

Figure 5.49: Measured results of the QRFH prototype (a) E-plane cuts (b) H-plane cuts (c) $\phi = 45^\circ$ plane. The close agreement found between the simulated and measured results is evidence of the reduction in sensitivity to manufacturing tolerances, which the quadraxial feed gives. Not only does it pose a simple assembling solution, but the measured results is evidence of the reduction in sensitivity to manufacturing tolerances, which the quadraxial feed gives. The close agreement found between the simulated and measured results is evidence of the reduction in sensitivity to manufacturing tolerances, which the quadraxial feed gives. Not only does it pose a simple assembling solution, but the measured results is evidence of the reduction in sensitivity to manufacturing tolerances, which the quadraxial feed gives. This is contrary to the coaxial feed solution, where the coaxial line needs to feed through a very thin ridge and is highly sensitive to the excitation of higher order modes.

C. Performance in Reflector System

As this paper focuses on the design of a QRFH for a reflector antenna, the performance of the QRFH within the full reflector

As this paper focuses on the design of a QRFH for a reflector antenna, the performance of the QRFH within the full reflector

Chapter 6

Conclusions

This is the conclusion.

Appendices

Appendix A

Postgraduate Students

A.1 DEng Graduates

The DEng is the highest degree awarded by the Faculty of Engineering at Stellenbosch University. It is a lifetime award based on contributions over a full career.

1. D.B. Davidson - Contributions to Engineering Electromagnetics - (2017)
2. W.J. Perold - From High-Speed Superconducting Devices to Nanosensors (2017)

A.2 Postdoctoral Fellows

1. E. Knox-Davies - Scanning mm-wave antenna (2006-2007)
2. M. Schoeman - Meta-Modelling of Microwave Structures (2006-2007)
3. T. Sickel - X-band Limiters (2006-2007)
4. D. Prinsloo - Quad-Mode Antenna Arrays (2015-2016)

A.3 PhD Graduates

1. C. van Niekerk - Multi-Bias Decomposition-Based Optimisation for the Extraction of Small-Signal GaAs FET Models (1999)
2. R. Lehmensieck - Efficient Adaptive Sampling Applied to Multivariate, Multiple Output Rational Interpolation Models, with Applications in Electromagnetic-Based Device Modelling (2001)
3. W. Steyn - CAD-Based Iris Design Procedures for Multimode Coupled Cavity Devices (2002)

4. C.A.W. Vale - Growth-Based Computer Aided Design Strategies for Multimode Waveguide Design with the Aid of Functional Blocks (2001)
5. R.H. Geschke - Application of an Extended Huygens's Principle to Scattering Discontinuities in Waveguide (2004)
6. T. Sickel - Tuneable Evanescent Mode X-Band Waveguide Switch (2005)
7. M. Schoeman - Interpolation-Based Modelling of Microwave Ring Resonators (2006)
8. D.I.L. de Villiers - Analysis and Design of Conical Transmission Line Power Combiners (2007)
9. T. Stander - High-Power Broadband Absorptive Waveguide Filters (2009)
10. D.M.P. Smith - Aspects of Small Airborne Passive Millimetre-Wave Imaging Systems (2010)
11. S.O. Nasser - Miniaturised Multilayer RF and Microwave Circuits (2016)
12. D.S.vd M.Prinsloo - Multi-Mode Antennas for Hemispherical Field-of-View Coverage(2015)
13. T.S. Beukman - Modal-Based Design Techniques for Circular Quadruple-Ridged Flared Horn Antennas (2015)
14. T.G. Brand - Synthesis Methods for Multiband Coupled Resonator Filters (2014)
15. E. Meyer - Tunable Narrow-Band X-Band Bandpass Filters (2018)
16. S.K. Sharma - Variable Bandwidth Planar Coupled Resonator Filters

A.4 Current PhD students - 2018

1. R. Kenned - Optimum noise matching of very large connected antenna arrays
2. S. Maas - SIW Waffle-Iron Filters

A.5 Master's students upgraded to PhD

1. C.A.W. Vale
2. T. Sickel

3. D.I.L. de Villiers
4. T. Stander
5. E. Meyer (prev Botes)
6. R. Kenned

A.6 Master's Graduates

1. J.E. van Zyl - A Calibration Procedure for Superconducting Microwave Measurements Using One Calibration Standard (1994)
2. C. Smit - Die Ontwikkeling en Evaluasie van 'n Progressiewe Korrelasie kodesluitlus vir 'n Strekspektrum Kommunikasiestelsel (1995)
3. C. van Niekerk - An Investigation into the Manufacturing and Measurement of Superconducting Microwave Devices (1995)
4. J.C. Kruger - Design of Wideband, Low Loss, High Power Waveguide Couplers and Transitions for Implementation in Power Combiners and Dividers (1998)
5. W.J.A. van Brakel - Solving Three-Layer Planar Microwave Structures with the Method-of-Lines (1998)
6. W. Steyn - A Room Temperature X-Band Receiver Front End Optimised for Introduction of High Temperature Superconductor Technology (1998)
7. J.D. Theron - Die Ontwikkeling van 'n Koaksiale Resoneerder Filter vir Implementering in L-Band Dipleksers (1999)
8. M. M \ddot{u} ller - Neural Network Models of Slotted Waveguide Directional Couplers (2001)
9. A.P.E. van der Colff - Rekenaargesteunde Instelling van Gekoppelde-Resoneerder Filters deur die gebruik van Modelgebaseerde Parameteronttrekking (2002)
10. K.H. Cherenack - Modelling of Layered Cylindrical Dielectric Resonators with reference to Whispering Gallery Mode Resonators (2002)
11. L. Sam - The Design of a Coupled Coaxial Resonator Filter for Low Earth Orbit Satellites working at Microwave Frequencies (2002)
12. M. Schoeman - Mixed-Potential Integral Equation Technique for Hybrid Microstrip-Slotline Mutli-Layered Circuits with Horizontal and Vertical Shielding Walls (2003)

13. M.L. Strydom - Design of Equal Division Microwave Power Dividers (2003)
14. N. Coetzee - Asymmetrical S-band Coupled Resonator Filters (2005)
15. V.P. Netshifhire - The Design and Implementation of Microwave Receiver Front End Components (2005)
16. E.M Hansmann - An Investigation of Coupling Mechanisms in Narrow-band Microwave Filters (2009)
17. S. Maas - Coaxial Resonator Filters (2011)
18. S. Otto - A Study of Radio Astronomy Principles and SKA Pathfinder System Designs with Pulsar Science (2011)
19. M. van der Walt - A Design Environment for the Automated Optimisation of Low Cross-Polarisation Horn Antennas (2010)
20. K. Schoeman - Waveguide Antenna Feed for the Square Kilometre Array (2011)
21. D.S.vd M. Prinsloo - Characterisation of L-band Differential Low Noise Amplifiers (2011)
22. S.O. Nasser - An Investigation of the Equivalence between Comblin and Evanescent-Mode Waveguide Filters and Aspects related to Reduction of Manufacturing Costs for Comblin Filters (2011)
23. P. Terblanche - Electronically Adjustable Bandpass Filter (2011)
24. D.A. Botes - Wideband, Low-Noise Amplifiers for the Mid-Range SKA (2014)
25. M. van Wyk - The Ribbon Microphone: A Multi-Physics Educational Aid (2017)
26. G. van Tonder - Beamforming Techniques for a Quad-Mode Antenna Array (2016)
27. P.L. Benson - Tunable Lumped Element Notch Filter for UHF Communications Systems (2017)

A.7 Current Master's students

1. L. Johnson - Tunable Pedestal SIW Filters
2. A. Bester - Evaluation of the SU Antenna Range

Bibliography

- [1] W. Perold, “From High-Speed Superconducting Devices to Nanosensors,” Ph.D. dissertation, Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering, Stellenbosch University, 2017.
- [2] D. Davidson, “Contributions to Engineering Electromagnetics,” Ph.D. dissertation, Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering, Stellenbosch University, 2017.
- [3] R. Holemans, P. Van Der Walt, W. Rencken, P. Meyer, and P. Steyn, “Accurate procedures for the exact synthesis of high order narrow band distributed filters,” in *Second Joint Symposium on Antennas & Propagation and Microwave Theory and Techniques*, Pretoria, 1988, pp. 32.1–32.11.
- [4] R. Holemans, P. Van der Walt, W. Rencken, P. Meyer, and P. Steyn, “Accurate procedures for the exact synthesis of high order narrow band distributed filters,” *Transactions of the SAIEE*, vol. 80, no. 1, pp. 12–15, 1990.
- [5] P. Meyer and P. Van Der Walt, “Design of narrowband E plane waveguide filters,” in *Second Joint Symposium on Antennas & Propagation and Microwave Theory and Techniques*, Pretoria, 1988, pp. 26.1–26.11.
- [6] P. Meyer, “The design of E-plane waveguide filters with a pocket calculator,” *Joint Symposium on Antennas & Propagation and Microwave Theory and Techniques*, 1991.
- [7] P. Meyer and P. Van der Walt, “Design equations for narrow-band E-plane waveguide filters,” *Transactions of the SAIEE*, vol. 84, no. 3, pp. 226–229, 1993.
- [8] P. Meyer, “The design and analysis of waveguide E-plane filters with multiple round inductive posts using a Moment-Method approach,” in *IEEE AFRICON Conference 1996*, vol. 1, Stellenbosch, 1996, pp. 532–535.
- [9] —, “A comined Mode-Matching and Method-of-Lines procedure for the analysis of planar microwave structures,” PhD, Stellenbosch, 1995.

- [10] —, “Solving microstrip discontinuities with a combined Mode-Matching and Method-of-Lines procedure,” *Microwave and Optical Technology Letters*, vol. 8, no. 1, pp. 4–8, 1995.
- [11] P. Meyer and P. Van Der Walt, “Closed-form expression for implementing the method of lines for two-layer boxed planar structures,” *Electronics Letters*, vol. 30, no. 18, pp. 1497–1498, 1994.
- [12] P. Meyer, “Analysis of microstrip filters with a combined Mode-Matching and Method-of-Lines procedure,” in *IEEE MTT-S International Microwave Symposium Digest 1995*, vol. 2, Orlando, 1995, pp. 837–840.
- [13] R. Geschke, “Application of an Extended Huygens’s Principle to Scattering Discontinuities in Waveguide,” Ph.D. dissertation, Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering, Stellenbosch University, 2004.
- [14] R. Geschke, R. Ferrari, D. Davidson, and P. Meyer, “Application of extended Huygens’ principle to scattering discontinuities in waveguide,” in *2002 IEEE AFRICON Conference*, vol. 2, 2002, pp. 555–558.
- [15] —, “Application of extended Huygens’ Principle to scattering discontinuities in waveguide,” *Transactions of the SAIEE*, vol. 94, no. 2, pp. 28–31, 2003.
- [16] —, “Application of extended Huygens’ principle to dielectric posts in waveguide,” in *Proceedings of the IASTED International Conference on Antennas, Radar, and Wave Propagation*, 2004, pp. 107–110.
- [17] —, “The solution of waveguide scattering problems by application of an extended Huygens formulation,” *IEEE Transactions on Microwave Theory and Techniques*, vol. 54, no. 10, pp. 3698–3705, 2006.
- [18] C. Vale and P. Meyer, “Automated intelligent mode selection for fast mode matching analysis of waveguide discontinuities,” in *IEEE MTT-S International Microwave Symposium Digest 2001*, vol. 1, Phoenix, 2001, pp. 1949–1952.
- [19] M. Schoeman, “Mixed-Potential Integral Equation Technique for Hybrid Microstrip-Slotline Mutli-Layered Circuits with Horizontal and Vertical Shielding Walls,” Master’s thesis, Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering, Stellenbosch University, 2003.
- [20] M. Schoeman and P. Meyer, “On the structure and packing of the Moment matrix in problems supporting simultaneous electric and magnetic surface currents,” *Microwave and Optical Technology Letters*, vol. 41, no. 6, pp. 500–505, 2004.

- [21] D. De Villiers and P. Meyer, "An efficient grid placing technique for 2-D Method of Moments analysis of coupled line structures," in *2007 IEEE AFRICON Conference*, Windhoek, 2007, pp. 1–6.
- [22] J. van Zyl, "A Calibration Procedure for Superconducting Microwave Measurements Using One Calibration Standard," Master's thesis, Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering, Stellenbosch University, 1994.
- [23] J. Van Zyl, P. Meyer, and C. van Niekerk, "Simplified calibration procedure for cryogenic microwave measurements," in *IEEE MTT-S International Microwave Symposium Digest 1996*, vol. 3, 1996, pp. 1403–1406.
- [24] C. van Niekerk and P. Meyer, "The development of a simple TRL microstrip calibration and test fixture suitable for measurements at cryogenic temperatures," in *IEEE AFRICON Conference 1996*, vol. 2, Stellenbosch, 1996, pp. 919–922.
- [25] C. Van Niekerk, "Multi-Bias Decomposition-Based Optimisation for the Extraction of Small-Signal GaAs FET Models," Ph.D. dissertation, Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering, Stellenbosch University, 1999.
- [26] C. Van Niekerk and P. Meyer, "A new approach for the extraction of an FET equivalent circuit from measured S parameters," *Microwave and Optical Technology Letters*, vol. 11, no. 5, pp. 279–281, 1996.
- [27] ———, "Performance and limitations of decompositionbased parameter-extraction procedures for FET small-signal models," *IEEE Transactions on Microwave Theory and Techniques*, vol. 46, no. 11, pp. 1620–1627, 1998.
- [28] C. Van Niekerk, D. Schreurs, and P. Meyer, "Recent developments in non-linear device modelling techniques," in *IEEE AFRICON Conference 1999*, vol. 2, Cape Town, 1999, pp. 1105–1110.
- [29] C. Van Niekerk, P. Meyer, D. Schreurs, and P. Winson, "A robust integrated multibias parameter-extraction method for MESFET and HEMT models," *IEEE Transactions on Microwave Theory and Techniques*, vol. 48, no. 5, pp. 777–786, 2000.
- [30] R. Lehmsiek, "Efficient Adaptive Sampling Applied to Multivariate, Multiple Output Rational Interpolation Models, with Applications in Electromagnetic-Based Device Modelling," Ph.D. dissertation, Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering, Stellenbosch University, 2001.

- [31] R. Lehmensiek and P. Meyer, “An efficient adaptive frequency sampling algorithm for model-based parameter estimation, as applied to Aggressive Space Mapping,” *Microwave and Optical Technology Letters*, vol. 24, no. 1, pp. 71–78, 2000.
- [32] —, “Using efficient model-based parameter estimation for pole-free solutions of modal propagation constants, as applied to shielded planar structures,” *ACES Journal*, vol. 16, no. 1, pp. 1–10, 2001.
- [33] P. Meyer, R. Lehmensiek, and W. Steyn, “On the application of rational interpolation to root-finding problems in microwave engineering,” in *International Conference on Numerical Analysis and Applied Mathematics (ICNAAM) 2004*, Greece, 2004, pp. 265–268.
- [34] R. Lehmensiek and P. Meyer, “Creating accurate multivariate rational interpolation models of microwave circuits by using efficient adaptive sampling to minimize the number of computational electromagnetic analyses,” *IEEE Transactions on Microwave Theory and Techniques*, vol. 49, no. 8, pp. 1419–1430, 2001.
- [35] —, “Using efficient multivariate adaptive sampling by minimizing the number of computational electromagnetic analysis needed to establish accurate interpolation models,” in *IEEE MTT-S International Microwave Symposium Digest 2001*, vol. 1, Phoenix, 2001, pp. 1749–1752.
- [36] R. Lehmensiek, P. Meyer, and M. Müller, “Adaptive sampling applied to multivariate, multiple output rational interpolation models with application to microwave circuits,” *International Journal of RF and Microwave Computer-Aided Engineering*, vol. 12, no. 4, pp. 332–340, 2002.
- [37] M. Schoeman, “Interpolation-Based Modelling of Microwave Ring Resonators,” Ph.D. dissertation, Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering, Stellenbosch University, 2006.
- [38] M. Schoeman and P. Meyer, “On the use of adaptive rational interpolation for the calculation of resonator characteristics from MoM analysis,” in *International Conference on Adaptive Modeling and Simulation (ADMOS) 2005*, Barcelona, 2005, pp. 317–320.
- [39] —, “On the use of adaptive rational interpolation for the calculation of resonator characteristics from EM analysis,” in *International Journal of RF and Microwave Computer-Aided Engineering*, vol. 16, no. 6, 2006, pp. 545–553.
- [40] —, “Prediction of microwave resonator frequencies using 1D adaptive vector fitting,” in *International Conference on Numerical Analysis and Applied Mathematics (ICNAAM) 2006*, Greece, 2006, pp. 472–475.

- [41] ———, “A comparative study on adaptive rational macromodels of highly resonant structures,” *International Journal of RF and Microwave Computer-Aided Engineering*, vol. 17, no. 2, pp. 281–285, 2007.
- [42] D. Deschrijver, M. Schoeman, T. Dhaene, and P. Meyer, “Experimental analysis on the relaxation of macromodeling methods,” in *2007 IEEE AFRICON Conference*, Windhoek, 2007, pp. 1–5.
- [43] ———, “Rational approximation of noisy frequency responses,” in *23rd International Review of Progress in Applied Computational Electromagnetics (ACES 2007)*, no. 3, Verona, 2007, pp. 1439–1444.
- [44] M. Schoeman, T. Dhaene, and P. Meyer, “Vector fitting and state equation transformations to extract SPICE models,” in *International Conference on Numerical Analysis and Applied Mathematics (ICNAAM) 2006*, no. 1, Greece, 2006, pp. 462–465.
- [45] P. Meyer, C. Vale, and W. Steyn, “On the design of waveguide devices using multiple propagating modes,” in *6th International Conference on Telecommunications in Modern Satellite, Cable and Broadcasting Service, TELSIKS 2003 - Proceedings*, vol. 1, 2003, pp. 329–338.
- [46] W. Steyn, “CAD-Based Iris Design Procedures for Multimode Coupled Cavity Devices,” Ph.D. dissertation, Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering, Stellenbosch University, 2002.
- [47] W. Steyn, R. Lehmensiek, and P. Meyer, “Integrated CAD procedure for iris design in a multi-mode wave guide environment,” in *IEEE MTT-S International Microwave Symposium Digest 2001*, vol. 2, Phoenix, 2001, pp. 1163–1166.
- [48] W. Steyn and P. Meyer, “A shorted waveguide-stub coupling mechanism for narrow-band multimode coupled resonator filters,” *IEEE Transactions on Microwave Theory and Techniques*, vol. 52, no. 6, pp. 1622–1625, 2004.
- [49] C. Vale, “Growth-Based Computer Aided Design Strategies for Multimode Waveguide Design with the Aid of Functional Blocks,” Ph.D. dissertation, Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering, Stellenbosch University, 2001.
- [50] C. Vale and P. Meyer, “A design procedure for co-existing multi-mode waveguide bandstop filters,” in *IEEE MTT-S International Microwave Symposium Digest 2000*, vol. 2, Boston, 2000, pp. 1189–1192.
- [51] C. Vale, P. Meyer, and K. Palmer, “A design procedure for bandstop filters in waveguides supporting multiple propagating modes,” *IEEE*

- Transactions on Microwave Theory and Techniques*, vol. 48, no. 12, pp. 2496–2503, 2000.
- [52] T. Stander, “High-Power Broadband Absorptive Waveguide Filters,” Ph.D. dissertation, Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering, Stellenbosch University, 2009.
- [53] T. Stander, P. Meyer, P. Van Der Walt, and W. Steyn, “Waffle-iron filters with oblique boss patterns,” in *Proceedings of the 2012 International Conference on Electromagnetics in Advanced Applications, ICEAA’12*, Cape Town, 2012, pp. 1256–1257.
- [54] S. Maas and P. Meyer, “Multilayer SIW Waffle-Iron filters,” *IEEE Transactions on Microwave Theory and Techniques (submitted)*, 2018.
- [55] T. Stander and P. Meyer, “Etched ring absorbing waveguide filter based on a slotted waveguide antenna response,” *Microwave and Optical Technology Letters*, vol. 50, no. 4, pp. 977–981, 2008.
- [56] T. Stander, P. Meyer, and P. Van der Walt, “Compact high-power broadband absorptive filters using slotted waveguide harmonic pads,” *IET Microwaves, Antennas and Propagation*, vol. 8, no. 9, pp. 673–678, 2014.
- [57] R. Geschke, B. Jokanovic, and P. Meyer, “Filter parameter extraction for triple-band composite split-ring resonators and filters,” *IEEE Transactions on Microwave Theory and Techniques*, vol. 59, no. 6, pp. 1500–1508, 2011.
- [58] —, “Compact triple-band resonators using multiple split-ring resonators,” in *European Microwave Week 2009, EuMW 2009: Science, Progress and Quality at Radiofrequencies, Conference Proceedings - 39th European Microwave Conference, EuMC 2009*, Rome, 2009, pp. 366–369.
- [59] M. Ninic, B. Jokanovic, and P. Meyer, “Reconfigurable multi-state composite split-ring resonators,” *IEEE Microwave and Wireless Components Letters*, vol. 26, no. 4, pp. 267–269, 2016.
- [60] S. Qian, T. Brand, J. Hong, and P. Meyer, “The design of miniature multilayer bandpass filters with mixed couplings,” *IEEE Transactions on Microwave Theory and Techniques*, vol. 61, no. 12, pp. 4072–4078, 2013.
- [61] S. Nassar, “Miniaturised Multilayer RF and Microwave Circuits,” Ph.D. dissertation, Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering, Stellenbosch University, 2016.

- [62] P. Meyer and S. Nassar, "Pedestal substrate integrated waveguide resonators and filters," *IET Microwaves, Antennas & Propagation*, pp. 1–8, 2017.
- [63] E. Botes and P. Meyer, "Spatially decoupled varactor biasing for a tunable staircase filter," *IET Microwaves, Antennas and Propagation*, vol. 11, no. 1, pp. 10–16, 2017.
- [64] E. Meyer, "Tunable Narrow-Band X-Band Bandpass Filters," Ph.D. dissertation, Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering, Stellenbosch University, 2018.
- [65] S. Sharma, "Variable Bandwidth Planar Coupled Resonator Filters," Ph.D. dissertation, Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering, Stellenbosch University, 2018.
- [66] S. Sharma and P. Meyer, "Variable bandwidth coupled resonator filters utilizing tunable non-resonant node inverters," *IEEE Transactions on Microwave Theory and Techniques (submitted)*, 2018.
- [67] T. Brand, "Synthesis Methods for Multiband Coupled Resonator Filters," Ph.D. dissertation, Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering, Stellenbosch University, 2014.
- [68] T. Brand, P. Meyer, and R. Geschke, "Designing multiband coupled-resonator filters using reactance transformations," *International Journal of RF and Microwave Computer-Aided Engineering*, vol. 25, no. 1, pp. 81–92, 2015.
- [69] P. Meyer and T. Brand, "Design equations for multi-band coupled-resonator filters using reactance mapping," in *2015 IEEE Asia-Pacific Microwave Conference Proceedings, APMC*, vol. 1, Nanjing, 2016, pp. 1–4.
- [70] P. Meyer, T. Brand, and R. Geschke, "Techniques for the synthesis of multi-band transfer functions," in *Recent Advances in Multi-Band Microstrip Filters*, Cambridge University Press, Ed., 2015, pp. 67–109.
- [71] N. Jankovic, V. Crnojevic-Bengin, P. Meyer, and J. Hong, "Design methods of multi-band filters," in *Recent Advances in Multi-Band Microstrip Filters*. Cambridge University Press, 2015, pp. 5–66.
- [72] T. Sickel, P. Meyer, and P. Van der Walt, "An in situ tunable diode mounting topology for high-power X-band waveguide switches," *IEEE Transactions on Microwave Theory and Techniques*, vol. 55, no. 2, pp. 281–285, 2007.

- [73] S. Nassar, P. Meyer, and P. Van Der Walt, "An S-band combline filter with reduced size and increased pass-band separation," in *Proceedings of 14th Conference on Microwave Techniques, COMITE 2015*, Pardubice, 2015, pp. 1–4.
- [74] J. Kruger and P. Meyer, "Finline and coaxial line to waveguide transitions at X-band," in *Proceedings of the South African Symposium on Communications and Signal Processing, COMSIG*, Cape Town, 1998, pp. 401–406.
- [75] J. Kruger, "Design of Wideband, Low Loss, High Power Waveguide Couplers and Transitions for Implementation in Power Combiners and Dividers," Master's thesis, Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering, Stellenbosch University, 1998.
- [76] C. Vale and P. Meyer, "Designing high-performance finline tapers with vector-based optimization," *IEEE Transactions on Microwave Theory and Techniques*, vol. 47, no. 12, pp. 2467–2472, 1999.
- [77] P. Meyer and C. Vale, "Designing high-performance finline tapers with vector-based optimization," in *IEEE MTT-S International Microwave Symposium Digest 1999*, vol. 2, Anaheim, 1999, pp. 707–710.
- [78] P. Meyer, "Characteristics of tightly coupled crossed-guide waveguide directional couplers," in *1997 International Miteko Conference*, 1997, pp. 211–213.
- [79] P. Meyer and J. Kruger, "Wideband crossed-guide waveguide directional couplers," in *IEEE MTT-S International Microwave Symposium Digest 1998*, vol. 1, Baltimore, 1998, pp. 253–256.
- [80] D. De Villiers, "Analysis and Design of Conical Transmission Line Power Combiners," Ph.D. dissertation, Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering, Stellenbosch University, 2007.
- [81] D. De Villiers, P. Van der Walt, and P. Meyer, "Design of a ten-way conical transmission line power Combiner," *IEEE Transactions on Microwave Theory and Techniques*, vol. 55, no. 2, pp. 302–308, 2007.
- [82] ———, "Design of conical transmission line power combiners using tapered line matching sections," *IEEE Transactions on Microwave Theory and Techniques*, vol. 56, no. 6, pp. 1478–1484, 2008.
- [83] D. De Villiers and P. Meyer, "Numerical calculation of analytic solutions for higher order modes in conical lines," *International Journal of RF and Microwave Computer-Aided Engineering*, vol. 19, no. 1, pp. 99–109, 2009.

- [84] D. De Villiers, P. Van der Walt, and P. Meyer, "Design constraints in conical line power combiners," in *2010 10th Mediterranean Microwave Symposium, MMS 2010*, Guzelyurt, 2010, pp. 148–151.
- [85] T. Sickel, "Tuneable Evanescent Mode X-Band Waveguide Switch," Ph.D. dissertation, Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering, Stellenbosch University, 2005.
- [86] T. Sickel, P. Meyer, and P. Van Der Walt, "A waveguide PIN diode mount with thermal model for high-power applications," in *2014 18th IEEE Workshop on Signal and Power Integrity, SPI 2014 - Proceedings*, Ghent, 2014, pp. 1–4.
- [87] —, "Diode mounting topologies for X-band waveguide switches," in *2007 IEEE AFRICON Conference*, 2007, pp. 1–7.
- [88] D. Prinsloo, "Multi-Mode Antennas for Hemispherical Field-of-View Coverage," Ph.D. dissertation, Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering, Stellenbosch University, 2015.
- [89] D. Prinsloo, P. Meyer, R. Maaskant, and M. Ivashina, "Design of an active dual-mode antenna with near hemispherical Field of View coverage," in *Proceedings of the 2013 International Conference on Electromagnetics in Advanced Applications, ICEAA 2013*, Turin, 2013, pp. 1064–1067.
- [90] D. Prinsloo, R. Maaskant, M. Ivashina, and P. Meyer, "Mixed-mode sensitivity analysis of a combined differential and common mode active receiving antenna providing near-hemispherical field-of-view coverage," *IEEE Transactions on Antennas and Propagation*, vol. 62, no. 8, pp. 3951–3961, 2014.
- [91] D. Prinsloo, P. Meyer, M. Ivashina, and R. Maaskant, "A quad-mode antenna for accurate polarimetric measurements over an ultra-wide field-of-view," in *8th European Conference on Antennas and Propagation, EuCAP 2014*, The Hague, 2014, pp. 3260–3263.
- [92] D. Prinsloo, P. Meyer, R. Maaskant, and M. Ivashina, "Quad-mode antenna for wide-scan sparse arrays," in *IEEE Antennas and Propagation Society, AP-S International Symposium (Digest)*, vol. 2015-October, Vancouver, 2015, pp. 1516–1518.
- [93] —, "Conical quad-mode antenna with integrated tapered slot antennas for wide-field polarimetry," in *Proceedings of the 2015 IEEE-APS Topical Conference on Antennas and Propagation in Wireless Communications, IEEE APWC 2015*, Turin, 2015, pp. 1235–1238.

- [94] D. Prinsloo, M. Ivashina, R. Maaskant, and P. Meyer, "Beamforming strategies for active multi-mode antennas: Maximum gain, Signal-to-Noise ratio, and polarization discrimination," in *Proceedings - 2014 International Conference on Electromagnetics in Advanced Applications, ICEAA 2014*, Aruba, 2014, pp. 507–510.
- [95] D. Prinsloo, P. Meyer, R. Maaskant, and M. Ivashina, "Irregular quad-mode antenna array: Field-of-View comparison with the swedish LOFAR station," in *2015 9th European Conference on Antennas and Propagation, EuCAP 2015*, Lisbon, 2015, pp. 1–5.
- [96] D. Prinsloo, R. Maaskant, M. Ivashina, A. Glazunov, and P. Meyer, "Synergy in design of phased array antennas for modern radio astronomy and wireless communication systems," in *2016 10th European Conference on Antennas and Propagation, EuCAP 2016*, Davos, 2016, pp. 1–5.
- [97] D. Prinsloo, A. Glazunov, R. Maaskant, M. Ivashina, V. Kukush, and P. Meyer, "Design of a quad-mode antenna with near-hemispherical gain coverage and its characterization in MIMO scenarios," *IEEE Transactions on Antennas and Propagation (submitted 2018)*, 2018.
- [98] D. Prinsloo, R. Maaskant, M. Ivashina, and P. Meyer, "Multi-mode composite antenna," 2015.
- [99] —, "Tapered slot quad-mode antenna," 2015.
- [100] D. Prinsloo, "Characterisation of L-band Differential Low Noise Amplifiers," Master's thesis, Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering, Stellenbosch University, 2011.
- [101] D. Prinsloo and P. Meyer, "Noise figure measurement of three-port differential low-noise amplifiers," *Electronics Letters*, vol. 48, no. 10, pp. 578–580, 2012.
- [102] —, "Multi-mode noise parameters for multi-port networks," *IET Microwaves, Antennas and Propagation*, vol. 10, no. 3, pp. 333–338, 2016.
- [103] P. Meyer and D. Prinsloo, "Generalized multimode Scattering parameter and antenna far-field conversions," *IEEE Transactions on Antennas and Propagation*, vol. 63, no. 11, pp. 4818–4826, 2015.
- [104] P. Meyer, "Multi-conductor transmission line analysis using the generalized multi-mode S-parameter transformation," in *SPI 2015 - 19th IEEE Workshop on Signal and Power Integrity*, Berlin, 2015, pp. 1–4.
- [105] —, "On the use of S-parameter transformations to improve surrogate model behaviour of multiport networks," in *ECCOMAS Congress 2016 -*

- Proceedings of the 7th European Congress on Computational Methods in Applied Sciences and Engineering*, vol. 2, Crete, 2016, pp. 1–5.
- [106] T. Beukman, “Modal-Based Design Techniques for Circular Quadruple-Ridged Flared Horn Antennas,” Ph.D. dissertation, Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering, Stellenbosch University, 2015.
- [107] T. Beukman, M. Ivashina, R. Maaskant, P. Meyer, and C. Bencivenni, “A quadraxial feed for ultra-wide bandwidth quadruple-ridged flared horn antennas,” in *8th European Conference on Antennas and Propagation, EuCAP 2014*, The Hague, 2014, pp. 3312–3316.
- [108] T. Beukman, P. Meyer, M. Ivashina, R. Maaskant, and D. De Villiers, “Modal considerations for synthesizing the tapering profile of a quadruple-ridged flared horn antenna,” in *Proceedings - International Conference on Electromagnetics in Advanced Applications, ICEAA 2014*, Aruba, 2014, pp. 488–491.
- [109] D. De Villiers and P. Meyer, “Broadband offset quad-ridged waveguide orthomode transducer,” *Electronics Letters*, vol. 45, no. 1, pp. 60–62, 2009.
- [110] D. De Villiers, P. Meyer, and K. Palmer, “Design of a wideband orthomode transducer,” in *2009 IEEE AFRICON Conference*, Nairobi, 2009, pp. 1–6.
- [111] K. Schoeman, P. Meyer, and D. De Villiers, “Exponential TEM horn with a convex triangular arc,” in *2013 IEEE AFRICON Conference*, Mauritius, 2013, pp. 1–4.
- [112] M. Ivashina, T. Beukman, C. Bencivenni, O. Iupikov, R. Maaskant, P. Meyer, and M. Pantaleev, “Design of wideband quadruple-ridged flared horn feeds for future radio telescopes,” in *Antenna EMB Symposium, Swedish Microwave Days, 11-12 March, Gothenburg, Sweden*, 2014.
- [113] T. Beukman, P. Meyer, R. Maaskant, and M. Ivashina, “Equivalent circuit of a quadraxial feed for ultra-wide bandwidth quadruple-ridged flared horn antennas,” in *2015 9th European Conference on Antennas and Propagation, EuCAP 2015*, Lisbon, 2015, pp. 1–5.
- [114] T. Beukman, P. Meyer, M. Ivashina, and R. Maaskant, “Modal-based design of a wideband quadruple-ridged flared horn antenna,” *IEEE Transactions on Antennas and Propagation*, vol. 64, no. 5, pp. 1615–1626, 2016.